EVALUATION KIT AVAILABLE

*Click **here** to ask an associate for production status of specific part numbers.*

MAX17330

AccuCharge + ModelGauge m5 EZ 1-Cell Charger, Fuel Gauge, and Protector

General Description

The MAX17330 is a 28μA I_Q stand-alone charger, fuel gauge, protector, and battery internal self-discharge detection IC for 1-cell lithium-ion/polymer batteries. When a voltage source is present, the MAX17330 regulates charging by modulating the charge N-FET, using AccuCharge™ charger technology. The MAX17330 regulates charge voltage, current, and FET temperature. Stand-alone charging is supported by flexible configuration in nonvolatile memory. The IC supports the following:

- Low-Power Charging
  - 1mA to 500mA directly from universal 5V USB
  - No USB identification/coordination needed
- High-Power Parallel Packs (>1000mA)
  - Independently charges parallel packs
  - Prevents cross-charging for parallel batteries
  - Coordinates external DC-DC with alerts
  - Minimizes dropout and heat
- Protection and Charging Control—pack or host side

The MAX17330 ideal diode circuit supports a quick response to system transients and adapter removal with low voltage drop across the CHG FET.

The IC uses the ModelGauge™ m5 EZ algorithm that combines the short-term accuracy and linearity of a coulomb counter with the long-term stability of a voltage-based fuel gauge to provide industry-leading accuracy. The IC automatically compensates for cell aging, temperature, and discharge rate while providing accurate state-of-charge (SOC) in milliampere-hours (mAh) or percentage (%) over a wide range of operating conditions.

The IC monitors the voltage, current, temperature, and state of the battery to provide protection against over/undervoltage, overcurrent, short-circuit, over/undertemperature and overcharge conditions, and internal self-discharge protection using external high-side N-FETs to ensure that the lithium-ion/polymer battery operates under safe conditions which prolongs the life of the battery.

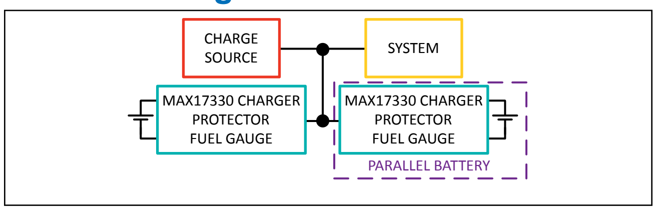
Applications

- USB PPS and Direct Charging
- Smart Batteries and Hybrid Supercap Batteries
- Dual Screen Smartphones, Tablets
- Hearables, Wearables, Smartwatches
- Medical Devices, Health, Fitness Monitors
- Handheld Radios, Computers, Accessories
- Home/Building Automation, Sensors, Cameras
- Parallel Battery AR/VR Systems

Benefits and Features

- Non-Volatile Programmable Stand-Alone AccuCharge Charger
  - 0.2% Charge Voltage 3.6V to 4.8V, Configurable
  - 1% Charge Current, 256 Current Settings
  - FET Temperature Limit and Heat Regulation
  - Prequal and Step-Charging Options
  - JEITA—6 Temperature Regions
- Battery Health + Programmable Safety/Protection
  - Overvoltage/Overcharge-Current
    - Temperature Region Dependent
  - Overcharge/Discharge/Short-Circuit Current
  - Over/Under Temperature
  - Zero-Volt or Greater than 1.8V Charging Option
  - Undervoltage + SmartEmpty
- Pushbutton Wakeup/Factory Ship Mode (0.5μA)
- ModelGauge m5 EZ Algorithm
  - Percent, Capacity, Time-to-Empty/Full, Age
  - Cycle+™ Age Forecast
- Dynamic Power—Estimates Power Capability
- SHA-256 Authentication to Prevent Cloning
- Precision Measurement Without Calibration
  - Current, Voltage, Power, Time, Cycles
  - Die Temperature and two Thermistors
- History Logging, User Data
- Low Quiescent Current
  - FETs Enabled: 28μA Active, 21μA Hibernate
  - FETs Disabled: 8μA Ship, 0.5μA/0.1μA Shutdown
- 2-wire (I^2C/SMBus™)
- 1.9mm x 2.5mm 15-bump 0.5mm pitch WLP

Simple Charger, Fuel Gauge with Protector Diagram



Ordering Information appears at end of data sheet.
ModelGauge, AccuCharge, and Cycle+ are trademarks of Maxim Integrated Products, Inc.
SMBus is a trademark of Intel Corp.

19-100962; Rev 1; 4/23

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS (CONTINUED)

TABLE OF CONTENTS (CONTINUED)

TABLE OF CONTENTS (CONTINUED)

TABLE OF CONTENTS (CONTINUED)

TABLE OF CONTENTS (CONTINUED)

TABLE OF CONTENTS (CONTINUED)

TABLE OF CONTENTS (CONTINUED)

TABLE OF CONTENTS (CONTINUED)

LIST OF FIGURES

LIST OF FIGURES (CONTINUED)

LIST OF TABLES

LIST OF TABLES (CONTINUED)

LIST OF TABLES (CONTINUED)

LIST OF TABLES (CONTINUED)

Absolute Maximum Ratings

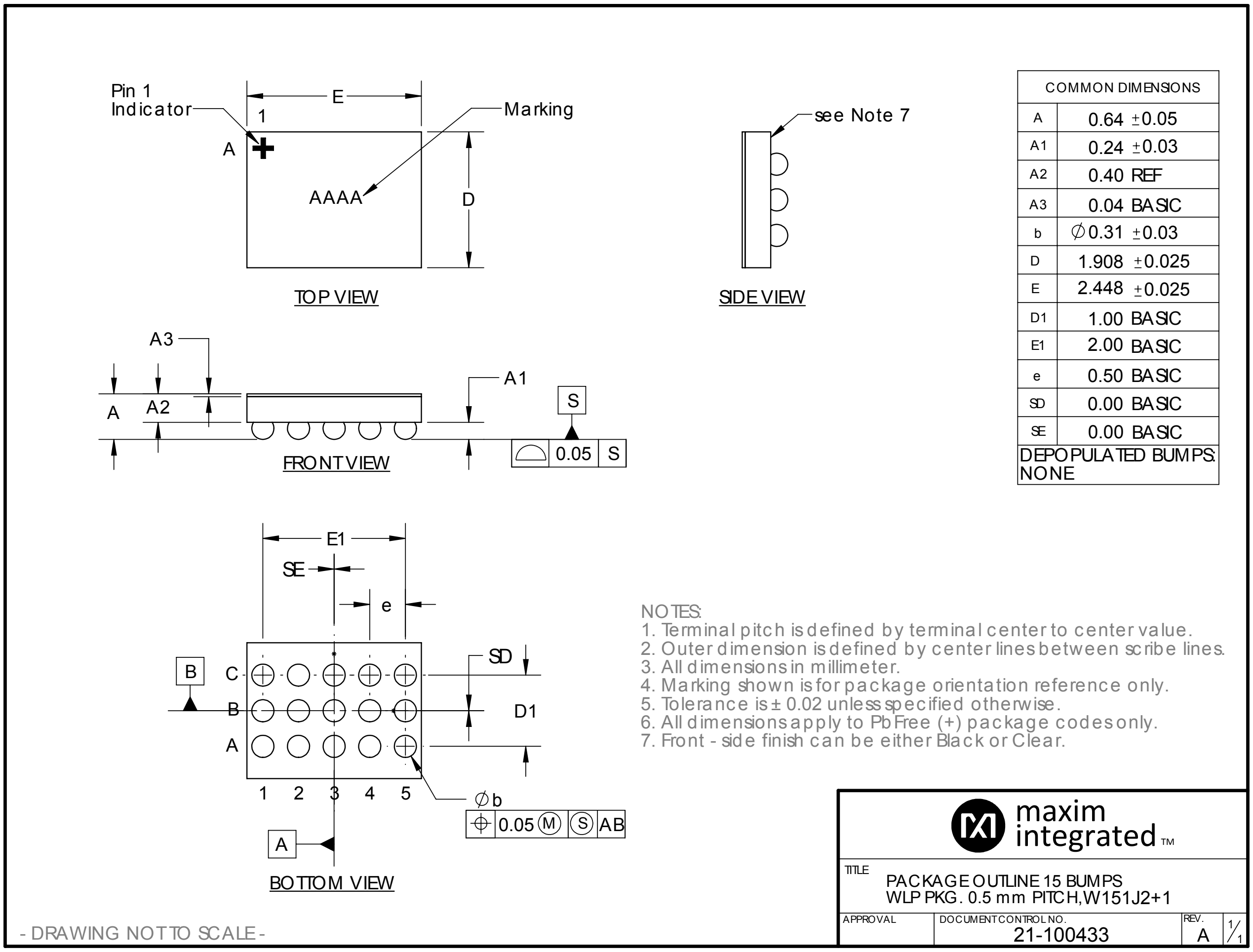
CP to BATT .... -0.3V to BATT +6V
CHG to BATT .... -0.3V to CP +0.3V
Continuous Source Current for BATT (during zero-volt charging) 50mA
Continuous Sink Current for SDA, ALRT, PFAIL 20mA
Continuous Source Current for PFAIL................................ 20mA
Continuous Sink Current for ZVC 50mA
Operating Temperature Range .... -40°C to +85°C
Storage Temperature Range............................. -55°C to +125°C
Soldering Temperature (reflow).. +260°C
Lead Temperature (soldering 10s) .... +300°C
BATT to GND... -0.3V to +6V
ALRT to GND... -0.3V to +17V
TH, PFAIL to GND ....-0.3V to BATT +0.3V
ZVC/TH2 to GND .... -0.3V to +6V
REG to GND .... -0.3V to +2.2V
CSN to BATT .... BATT - 0.3V to BATT +0.3V
CSP to BATT .... BATT - 0.3V to BATT +0.3V
DIS to GND .... -0.3V to CP +0.3V
PCKP to GND .... -0.3V to +28V
SDA, SCL to GND.. -0.3V to +20V

Stresses beyond those listed under "Absolute Maximum Ratings" may cause permanent damage to the device. These are stress ratings only, and functional operation of the device at these or any other conditions beyond those indicated in the operational sections of the specifications is not implied. Exposure to absolute maximum rating conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability.

Package Information

15 WLP

Package Code	W151J2+1
Outline Number	**21-100433**
Land Pattern Number	Refer to ***Application Note 1891***
Thermal Resistance, Four-Layer Board:	
Junction to Ambient (θ_{JA})	62°C/W
Junction to Case (θ_{JC})	N/A



For the latest package outline information and land patterns (footprints), go to ***www.maximintegrated.com/packages***. Note that a "+", "#", or "-" in the package code indicates RoHS status only. Package drawings may show a different suffix character, but the drawing pertains to the package regardless of RoHS status.

Package thermal resistances were obtained using the method described in JEDEC specification JESD51-7, using a four-layer board. For detailed information on package thermal considerations, refer to ***www.maximintegrated.com/thermal-tutorial***.

Electrical Characteristics

(V_{BATT} = 2.16V to 4.9V, typical value at 3.6V (Note 1), T_A = -40°C to +85°C, typical values are T_A = +25°C, see the *Functional Diagram*. Limits are 100% tested at T_A = +25°C. Limits over the operating temperature range and relevant supply voltage range are guaranteed by design and characterization.)

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNITS
POWER SUPPLY						
Supply Voltage	V_{BATT}	(Note 1)	2.16		4.9	V
Undervoltage Shutdown Supply Current	I_{DD0}	Undervoltage shutdown			0.1	µA
DeepShip Supply Current	I_{DD1}	T_A ≤ +50°C, typical at +25°C		0.5	1.1	µA
Ship Supply Current	I_{DD2}	DpShpEn = 0, T_A ≤ +50°C, typical at +25°C, protection FETs off; 1.4s updates		11	24	µA
		DpShpEn = 0, T_A ≤ +50°C, typical at +25°C, protection FETs off; 5.625s updates		8		µA
Hibernate Supply Current	I_{DD3}	T_A ≤ +50°C, typical at +25°C, average current, CHG and DIS on, 1.4s updates		21	42	µA
Active Supply Current	I_{DD4}	T_A ≤ +50°C, typical at +25°C, average current, not including thermistor measurement current		28	52	µA
Regulation Voltage	V_{REG}			1.8		V
CHARGE ACCURACY						
Charge Voltage Accuracy	V_{GERR}	nVChgCfg setting, T_A = +25°C	-7.5		+7.5	mV
		nVChgCfg setting, -40ºC ≤ T_A ≤ +85ºC	-20		+20	mV
Charge Voltage Range	V_{FS}	nVChgCfg setting, 5mV resolution	3.56		4.835	V
Charge Current Accuracy		nIChgCfg vs. CSP-CSN, Charge Current set 10mV to 25.6mV	-1.1		+1.1	%
		nIChgCfg vs. CSP-CSN, Charge Current set 6mV to 10mV	-1.15		+1.15	%
	I_{GERR}	nIChgCfg vs. CSP-CSN, nIChgCfg from 4mV to 6mV	-1.25		+1.25	% of Reading
		nIChgCfg vs. CSP-CSN, nIChgCfg from 2.5mV to 4mV	-1.4		+1.4	%
Charge Current Range	I_{FS}	nIChgCfg setting, 400mA to 2560mA, 10mA steps (with 10mΩ)	2.5		25.6	mV
Charge Heat Regulation Max Setting		nChgCfg1.HeatLim; R_{SENSE} = 10mΩ; multiply R_{SENSE}/10mΩ for other sense resistors		3264		mW
ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERSION						
Voltage Measurement Error	V_{GERR}	T_A = +25°C, 2.3V ≤ V_{BATT} ≤ 4.9V	-7.5		+7.5	mV
		-40ºC ≤ T_A ≤ +85ºC, 2.3V ≤ V_{BATT} ≤ 4.9V	-20		+20	mV
Voltage Measurement Resolution	V_{LSB}			78.125		µV
Current Measurement Offset Error	I_{OERR}	CSP = CSN = 3.6V, long-term average (Note 2)		±1.5		µV
Current Measurement Gain Error	I_{GERR}	CSP between CSN-50mV and CSN+50mV	-1		+1	% of Reading

Electrical Characteristics (continued)

(V_{BATT} = 2.16V to 4.9V, typical value at 3.6V (Note 1), T_A = -40°C to +85°C, typical values are T_A = +25°C, see the *Functional Diagram*. Limits are 100% tested at T_A = +25°C. Limits over the operating temperature range and relevant supply voltage range are guaranteed by design and characterization.)

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	CONDITIONS		MIN	TYP	MAX	UNITS
Current Measurement Resolution	I_{LSB}				1.5625		µV
Current Measurement Range	I_{FS}				±51.2		mV
Internal Temperature Measurement Error	TI_{GERR}				±1		ºC
Internal Temperature Measurement Resolution	TI_{LSB}	TH (Note 2)			0.00391		ºC
Auxiliary Ratiometric Measurement Error	TE_{GERR}			-0.5		+0.5	% of Reading
PCKP Measurement Resolution	VP_{LSB}				312.5		µV
PCKP Measurement Range	VP_{FS}			1.5		BATT + 5.12	V
PCKP Versus BATT Measurement Error	VP2Berr	T_A = +25ºC		-10		+10	mV
PCKP							
PCKP Startup Voltage				3.1			V
PCKP Startup Hysteresis				100	170	220	mV
PCKP Current		BATT = PCKP	T_A < +85°C, typical at T_A = +25°C		1.2	2.5	µA
PCKP Pulldown Resistor	R_{PDPCKP}			24	40	60	kΩ
CHARGE PUMP							
CP Output Voltage	V_{CP}	Battery only	I_{CHG} + I_{DIS} = 1µA	2 x V_{BATT} - 0.4	2 x V_{BATT} - 0.2	2 x V_{BATT}	V
CHG DRIVER							
CHG Output High	V_{OHC}	I_{OH} = -1mA		V_{CP} - 0.4			V
CHG Output Low	V_{OLC}	I_{OL} = 1mA				BATT + 0.4	V
DIS DRIVER							
DIS Output High	V_{OHD}	I_{OH} = -100µA		V_{CP} - 0.4			V
DIS Output Low	V_{OLD}	I_{OL} = 100µA				0.1	V
ZERO-VOLT CHARGE							
Voltage Drop Between ZVC and BATT	$V_{ZVCDROP}$	30mA into ZVC	BATT = 0V		1.4	2	V
			BATT = 2.3V		0.15	0.5	

Electrical Characteristics (continued)

(V_{BATT} = 2.16V to 4.9V, typical value at 3.6V (Note 1), T_A = -40°C to +85°C, typical values are T_A = +25°C, see the *Functional Diagram*. Limits are 100% tested at T_A = +25°C. Limits over the operating temperature range and relevant supply voltage range are guaranteed by design and characterization.)

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNITS
INPUT/OUTPUT						
Output Drive Low, ALRT, SDA, PFAIL	V_{OL}	I_{OL} = 4mA, V_{BATT} = 2.3V	0.01		0.4	V
Output Drive High, PFAIL	V_{OH}	I_{OH} = -1mA, V_{BATT} = 2.3V	V_{BATT} - 0.1			V
Input Logic High, SCL, SDA, PIO	V_{IH}		1.5			V
Input Logic Low, SCL, SDA, PIO	V_{IL}				0.5	V
PIO Wake Debounce	PIO_WD	Ship mode		100		ms
External Thermistance Resistance	R_{EXT10}	nPackCfg.R100 = 0		10		kΩ
	R_{EXT100}	nPackCfg.R100 = 1		100		
RESISTANCE AND LEAKAGE						
Leakage Current, CSN, CSP, ALRT, TH	I_{LEAK}	V_{ALRT} < 15V	-1		+1	µA
Input Pulldown Current	I_{PD}	SDA, SCL pin = 0.4V		0.2	0.5	µA
COMPARATORS						
Overcharge Current Threshold Offset Error	OC_{OE}	OC comparator	-0.8		+0.8	mV
Overdischarge Current Threshold Offset Error	OD_{OE}	OD comparator	-1.5		+1.5	mV
Short-Circuit Threshold Offset Error	SC_{OE}	SC comparator	-2.5		+2.5	mV
Overcurrent Threshold Gain Error	$ODOCSC_{GE}$	OC, OD, or SC comparator	-4.0		+4.0	% of Threshold
Overcurrent Comparator Delay	OC_{DLY}	OD or SC comparator, 20mV minimum input overdrive, delay configured to minimum		2	6	µs
Supplement Mode Comparator Threshold Falling PCKP Versus BATT	$V_{SUP\_TH\_F}$	BATT ≥ 3.4V, PCKP sweep down		30		mV
TIMING						
Time-Base Accuracy	t_{ERR}	T_A = +25°C	-1		+1	%
SHA Calculation Time	t_{SHA}	V_{BATT} > 3V		4.5	10	ms
TH Precharge Time	t_{PRE}	Time between turning on the TH bias and analog-to-digital conversions	8.48			ms
Task Period	t_{TP}			351.5		ms
NONVOLATILE MEMORY						
Nonvolatile Access Voltage	V_{NVM}	For block programming and recalling, applied on BATT	3.0			V
Programming Supply Current	I_{PROG}	Current from BATT at 2.9V for block programming	2	5.5	10	mA

Electrical Characteristics (continued)

(V_{BATT} = 2.16V to 4.9V, typical value at 3.6V (Note 1), T_A = -40°C to +85°C, typical values are T_A = +25°C, see the *Functional Diagram*. Limits are 100% tested at T_A = +25°C. Limits over the operating temperature range and relevant supply voltage range are guaranteed by design and characterization.)

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNITS
Block Programming Time	t_{BLOCK}			368	7360	ms
Page Programming Time	t_{UPDATE}	SHA secret update or learned parameters update		64	1280	ms
Nonvolatile Memory Recall Time	t_{RECALL}				5	ms
Write Capacity, Configuration Memory	n_{CONFIG}	(Notes 2, 3, 4)		7		writes
Write Capacity, SHA Secret	n_{SECRET}	(Notes 2, 3, 4)		5		writes
Write Capacity, Learned Parameters	$n_{LEARNED}$	(Notes 2, 3, 4)		99		writes
Data Retention	t_{NV}	(Note 2)	10			years
2-WIRE INTERFACE						
SCL Clock Frequency	f_{SCL}	(Note 5)	0		400	kHz
Bus Free Time Between a STOP and START Condition	t_{BUF}		1.3			µs
Hold Time (Repeated) START Condition	$t_{HD:STA}$	(Note 6)	0.6			µs
Low Period of SCL Clock	t_{LOW}		1.3			µs
High Period of SCL Clock	t_{HIGH}		0.6			µs
Setup Time for a Repeated START Condition	$t_{SU:STA}$		0.6			µs
Data Hold Time	$t_{HD:DAT}$	(Notes 7, 8)	0		0.9	µs
Data Setup Time	$t_{SU:DAT}$	(Note 7)	100			ns
Rise Time of Both SDA and SCL Signals	t_R		5		300	ns
Fall Time of Both SDA and SCL Signals	t_F		5		300	ns
Setup Time for STOP Condition	$t_{SU:STO}$		0.6			µs
Spike Pulse Width Suppressed by Input Filter	t_{SP}	(Note 9)			50	ns
Capacitive Load for Each Bus Line	C_B				400	pF
SCL, SDA Input Capacitance	C_{BIN}			6		pF

Note 1: All voltages are referenced to GND.

Note 2: Specification is guaranteed by design (GBD) and not production tested.

Note 3: Write capacity numbers shown have one write subtracted for the initial write performed during manufacturing test to set nonvolatile memory to a known value.

Note 4: Due to the nature of one-time programmable memory, write endurance cannot be production tested. Follow the nonvolatile memory and SHA secret update procedures detailed in the data sheet.

Note 5: Timing must be fast enough to prevent the IC from entering shutdown mode due to bus low for a period greater than the shutdown timer setting.

Note 6: f_{SCL} must meet the minimum clock low time plus the rise/fall times.

Note 7: The maximum $t_{HD:DAT}$ has to only be met if the device does not stretch the low period (t_{LOW}) of the SCL signal.

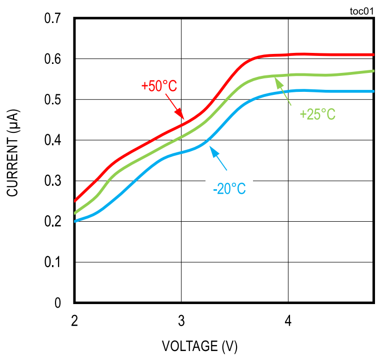
Note 8: This device internally provides a hold time of at least 100ns for the SDA signal (referred to the minimum V_{IH} of the SCL signal) to bridge the undefined region of the falling edge of SCL.

Note 9: On 10mΩ R_{SENSE}

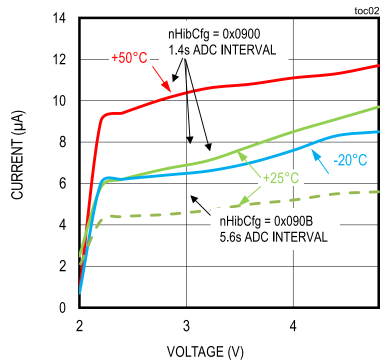
Typical Operating Characteristics

(T_A = +25°C, unless otherwise noted.)

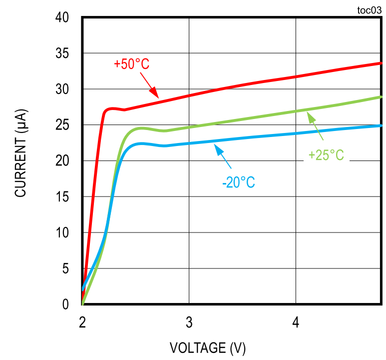
DEEP SHIP MODE CURRENT vs SUPPLY VOLTAGE



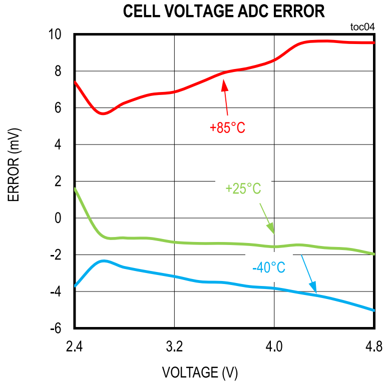
FETS OFF SHIP MODE CURRENT vs SUPPLY VOLTAGE



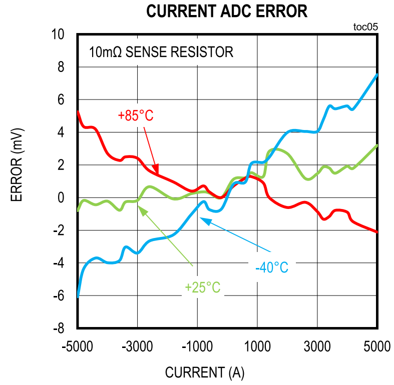
ACTIVE MODE CURRENT vs SUPPLY VOLTAGE



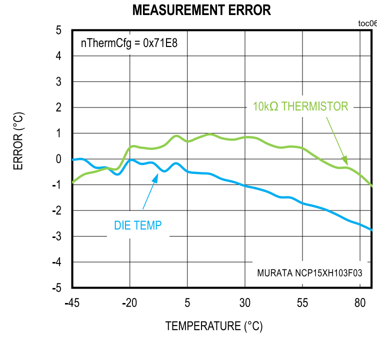
CELL VOLTAGE ADC ERROR



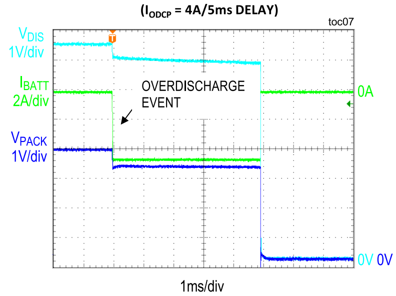
CURRENT ADC ERROR



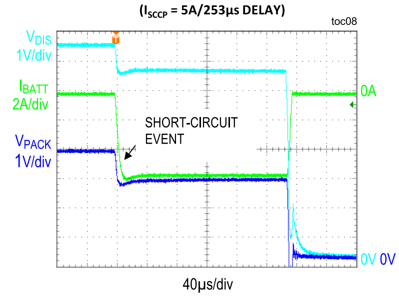
DIE TEMPERATURE AND THERMISTOR MEASUREMENT ERROR



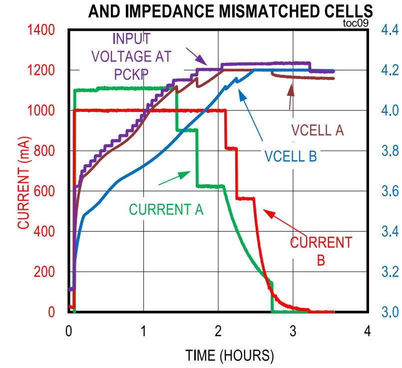
OVERDISCHARGE CURRENT PROTECTION
(I_{ODCP} = 4A/5ms DELAY)



SHORT-CIRCUIT PROTECTION
(I_{SCCP} = 5A/253µs DELAY)



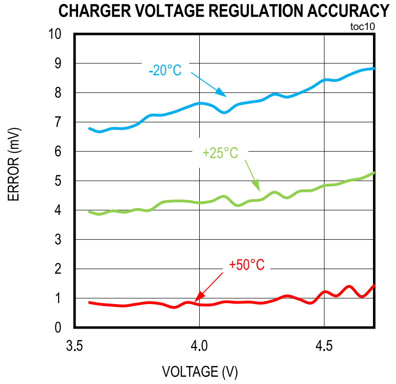
PARALLEL MAX17330 CHARGING CAPACITY AND IMPEDANCE MISMATCHED CELLS



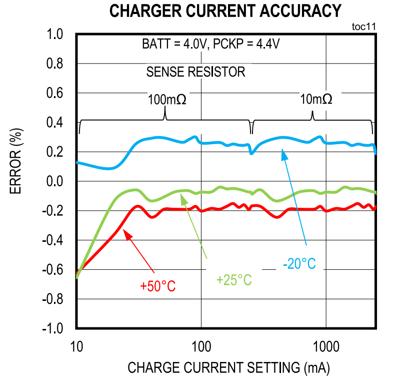
Typical Operating Characteristics (continued)

(T_A = +25°C, unless otherwise noted.)

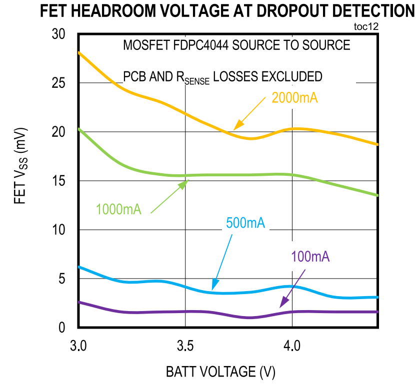
CHARGER VOLTAGE REGULATION ACCURACY



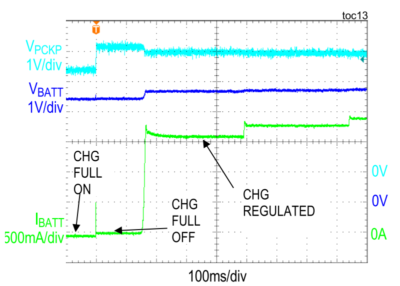
CHARGER CURRENT ACCURACY



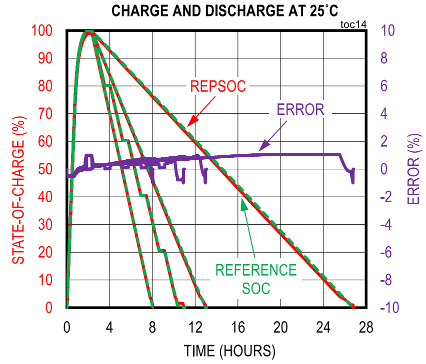
FET HEADROOM VOLTAGE AT DROPOUT DETECTION



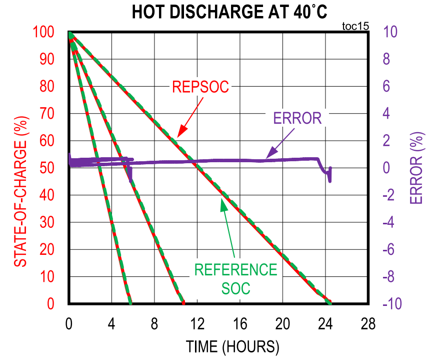
CHARGER START



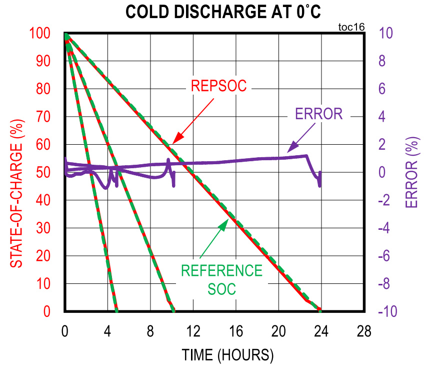
CHARGE AND DISCHARGE AT 25˚C



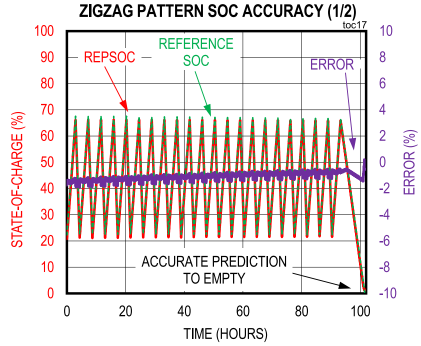
HOT DISCHARGE AT 40˚C



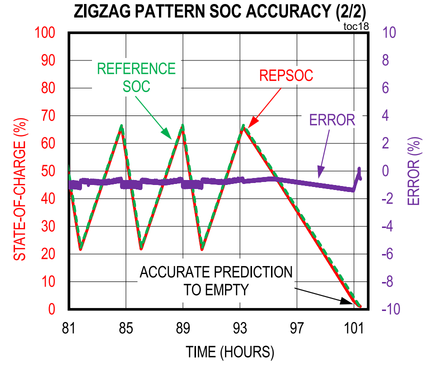
COLD DISCHARGE AT 0˚C



ZIGZAG PATTERN SOC ACCURACY (1/2)

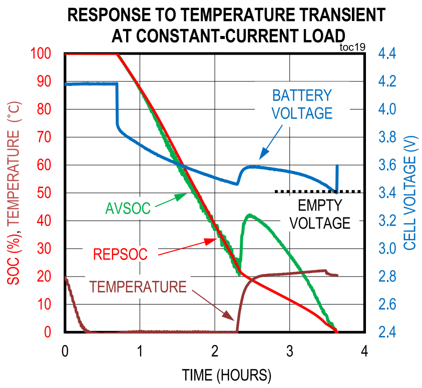


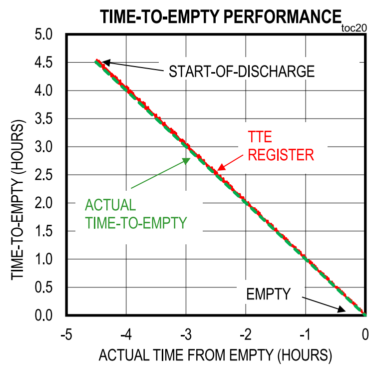
ZIGZAG PATTERN SOC ACCURACY (2/2)

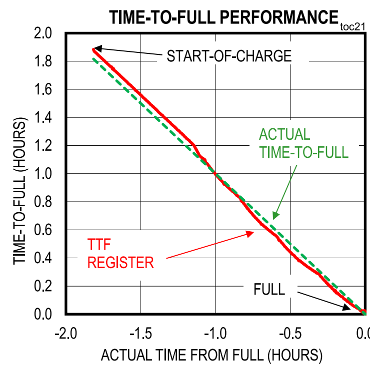


Typical Operating Characteristics (continued)

(T_A = +25°C, unless otherwise noted.)

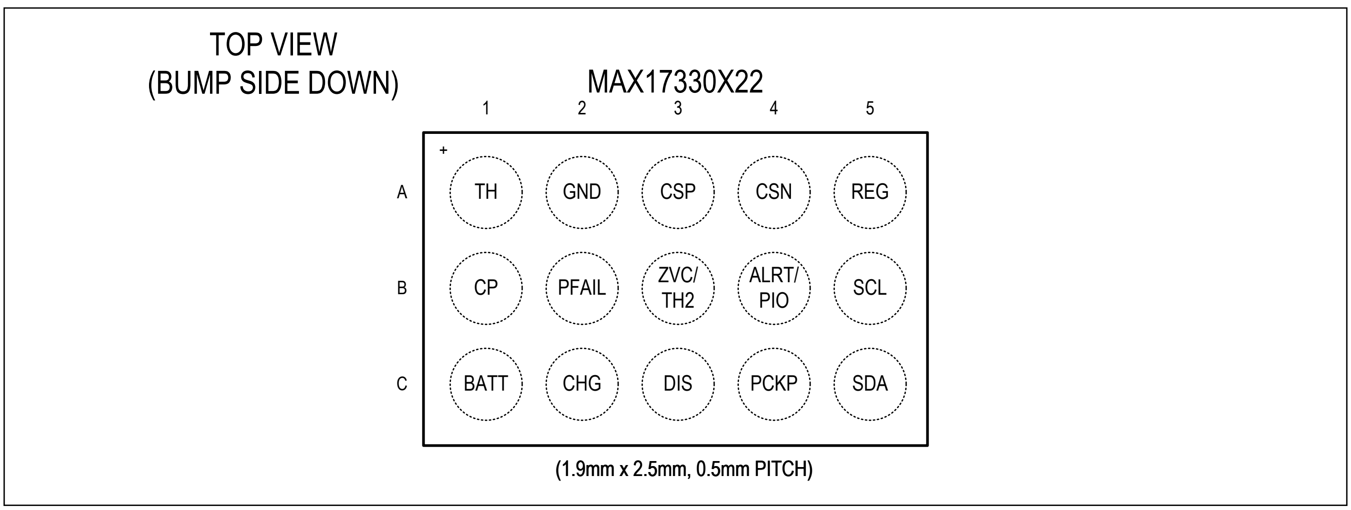






Pin Configuration

WLP



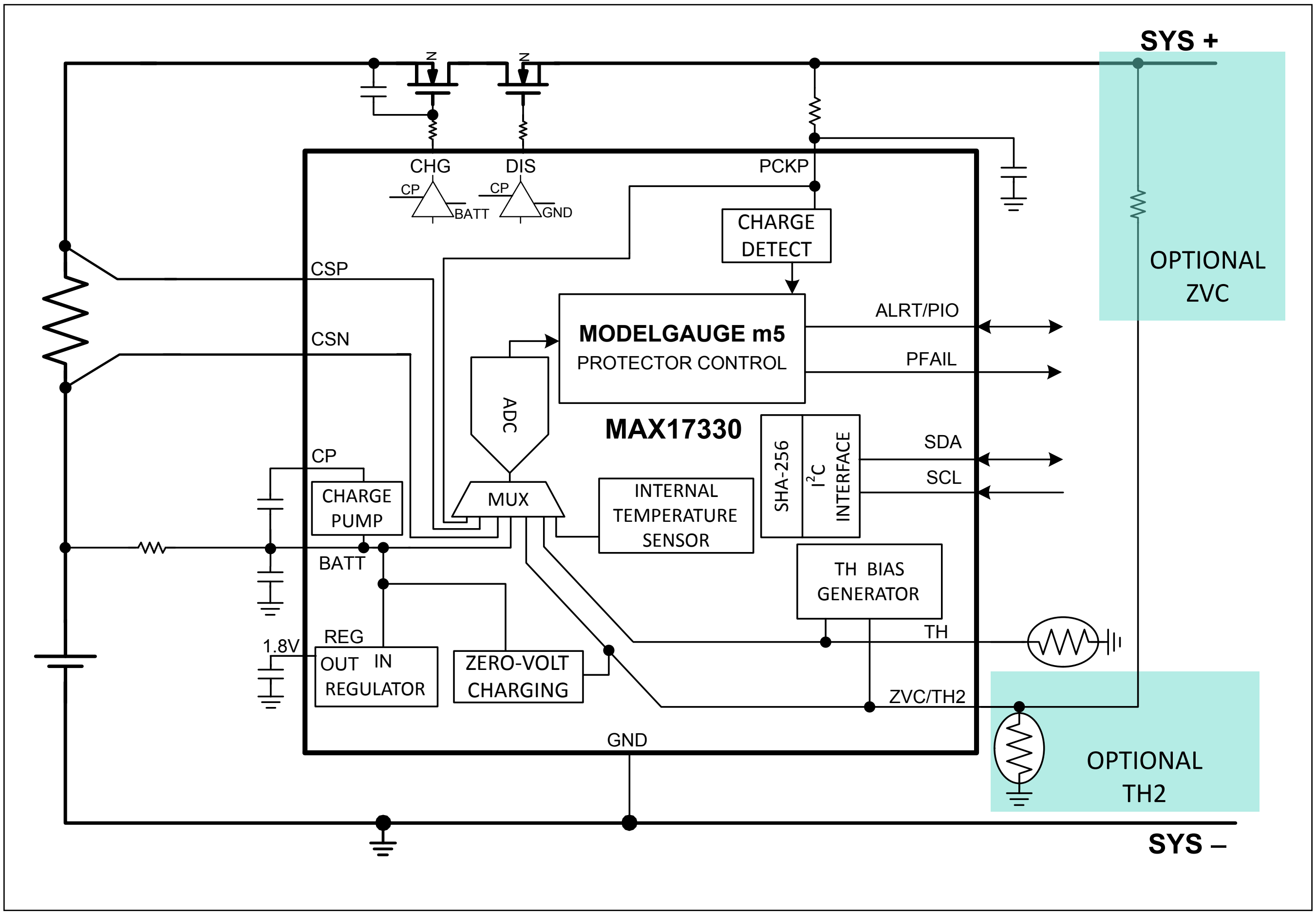
Pin Description

PIN	NAME	FUNCTION
A1	TH	Battery Thermistor Connection. Connect an external 10kΩ or 100kΩ thermistor between TH and GND to measure the battery temperature. Connect to BATT if not used.
B1	CP	Charge Pump Output. CP provides the voltage for driving external charge and discharge protection N-FETs. Connect a bypass 0.1µF capacitor between CP and BATT.
C1	BATT	Battery Connection. The MAX17330 receives power from BATT and measures cell voltage at BATT. Connect BATT to positive terminal of the battery with a 10Ω resistor and bypass with a 0.1µF capacitor to GND.
B2	PFAIL	Permanent Failure Indicator (Optional). Connect to secondary protector to take action in case of primary FET failure detection. Disconnect if not used, or connect to GND with a 2MΩ resistor.

Pin Description (continued)

PIN	NAME	FUNCTION
A3	CSP	Current-Sense-Resistor Positive Input. Kelvin-connect to the Pack+ side of the sense resistor.
A4	CSN	Current-Sense Negative Input. Kelvin connect to the cell side of the sense resistor.
A5	REG	1.8V Regulator. REG provides a 1.8V supply for the IC. Bypass with a 0.47μF capacitor between REG and GND.
C5	SDA	Serial Data Input/Output for I2C Communication Modes. Open-drain output driver. Connect to the DATA terminal of the battery pack. SDA has an internal pulldown (IPD) for sensing pack disconnection.
B5	SCL	Serial Clock Input for I2C Communication. Input only. For I2C communication, connect to the clock terminal of the battery pack. SCL has an internal pulldown (IPD) for sensing pack disconnection.
B4	ALRT/PIO	Alert Output. ALRT is open-drain and active-low. Connect an external pullup resistor to indicate alerts. See the *Alerts* section for more details. *Pushbutton Wakeup*. Connect to the host-system's power button to GND without any external pullup since the IC has an internal pullup. The IC wakes up from shutdown mode when the button is pressed.
C4	PCKP	Pack Positive Terminal or System Positive Terminal. PCKP pin is used for charger detection, input voltage measurement, and overcurrent fault removal detection.
C3	DIS	Discharge FET Control. DIS enables/disables battery discharge by driving an external N-FET between CP and GND.
B3	ZVC/TH2	Zero-Volt Charge Input Pin. Connect to PCKP through a resistor for ZVC function. Alternative function is temperature sense for CHG-FET, connect to Thermistor. Leave disconnected or connect to GND if unused.
C2	CHG	Charge FET Control. CHG blocks/allows battery charge by controlling an external N-FET between CP and BATT.
A2	GND	IC GND

Functional Diagram



Detailed Description

General Description

The MAX17330 is a 28µA I_Q stand-alone charger, fuel gauge IC with protector and SHA-256 authentication for 1-cell lithium-ion/polymer batteries. The MAX17330 implements Maxim Integrated's ModelGauge m5 EZ fuel gauge algorithm without requiring host interaction for configuration, which makes the MAX17330 an excellent charger, protector, and fuel gauge. Using AccuCharge charger technology, the MAX17330 charges the battery with programmable voltage and current based on measured temperature and battery state using a configurable profile of voltage and current based on temperature and cell voltage. The MAX17330 monitors the voltage, current, temperature, and state of the battery to ensure that the lithium-ion/polymer battery is operating under safe conditions to prolong the life of the battery. Voltage of the battery pack is measured at the BATT connection. Current is measured with an external sense resistor placed between the CSP and CSN pins. Power and average power are also reported. An external NTC thermistor connection allows the IC to measure the temperature of the battery pack by monitoring the TH pin and optionally calculate the temperature of the FET with the ZVC/TH2 pin. The TH/TH2 pins provides an internal pull-up for the thermistor that is disabled internally when temperature is not being measured. Internal die temperature of the IC is also measured and can be a proxy for the protection/charge FET temperature if it is located close to the IC, or used with the TH2 thermistor to calculate the FET temperature if located further from the IC.

The MAX17330 controls charging in current, voltage, temperature, and power limit modes. Each of these limits is set in non-volatile memory, and the battery is charged at the highest rate within these limits. The voltage and current are adjusted over temperature to comply with the 6 zone JEITA temperature settings and with 3 zone step-charging based on the battery voltage. For additional functionality, see the *Charger* section.

The MAX17330 scales the charging current based on the sense resistor, making it well suited to many types of batteries, ranging from less than 10mAh in wearable applications to greater than 10,000mAh in parallel packs or large capacity applications.

The MAX17330 provides programmable discharge protection for overdischarge currents (fast, medium, and slow protection), overtemperature, and undervoltage. The IC also provides programmable charge protection for overvoltage, over/undertemperature, overcharge currents (fast and slow), charge done, charger communication timeout, and overcharge capacity fault. The IC provides ideal diode discharge behavior even while a charge fault persists. The IC provides programmable charging current/voltage prescription following JEITA temperature regions as well as step-charging. The MAX17330 provides additional protection to permanently disable the battery by overriding a secondary protector or blowing a fuse in severe fault conditions. This is useful when the IC has detected FET failure and is unable to block charge/discharge any other way. Additional functionality is described in the Protector section.

The ModelGauge m5 EZ algorithm combines the short-term accuracy and linearity of a coulomb counter with the long-term stability of a voltage-based fuel gauge, along with temperature compensation to provide industry-leading fuel-gauge accuracy. Additionally, the algorithm does not suffer from abrupt corrections that normally occur in coulomb-counter algorithms since tiny continual corrections are distributed over time. The MAX17330 automatically compensates for aging, temperature, and discharge rate and provides accurate state of charge (SOC) in milliampere-hours (mAh) or percentage (%) over a wide range of operating conditions. Fuel gauge errors always converge to 0% as the cell approaches empty. Dynamic power functionality provides instantaneous maximum battery output power which can be delivered to the system without violating the minimum system input voltage. The IC provides accurate estimates of time-to-empty and time-to-full and provides three methods for reporting the age of the battery: reduction in capacity, increase in battery resistance, and cycle odometer. In addition, age forecasting allows the user to estimate the expected lifespan of the cell.

To prevent battery clones, the IC integrates SHA-256 authentication with a 160-bit secret key. Every IC also incorporates a 64-bit unique identification number (ROM ID). Additionally, up to 122 bytes of user memory (NVM) can be made available to store custom information.

The IC supports three low-power modes: undervoltage shutdown (0.1µA), deepship (0.1µA or 0.5µA), and ship (8µA). The IC can enter these low-power modes by command, communication collapsed (if enabled), or undervoltage shutdown. The IC can wake up from these low-power modes by communication, charger detection, or pushbutton wakeup (if enabled and installed). Pushbutton wakeup disconnects the battery from the system during shipping, yet wakes up immediately upon the user pressing the button so the user does not need to plug in a charger.

Communication to the host occurs over a standard I^2C interface. SCL is an input from the host, and SDA is an open-drain I/O pin that requires an external pullup. The ALRT pin is an output that can be used as an external interrupt to the host processor if certain application conditions are detected.

Charge Control

Lithium-ion/polymer batteries are very common in a wide variety of portable electronic devices because they have very high energy density, minimal memory effect, and low self-discharge. However, care must be taken to avoid overheating or overcharging these batteries to prevent damage to the batteries, potentially resulting in dangerous outcomes/explosive results. By operating in safe temperature ranges, at safe voltages and under safe current levels, the overall safety of the lithium-ion/polymer batteries can be assured throughout the life of the battery.

Using AccuCharge technology, the MAX17330 controls the charging voltage and current dynamically based on the JEITA charge profile, step-charging, battery temperature, and temperature of the charging FET. The charge current is reduced at low battery voltage (prequal), low and high temperature, or when the charging FET is at a temperature or power dissipation limit. Figure 1 shows the typical charge profile through the operating range of a battery. MAX17330 has several regulation and control options, shown in the following list.

- **Autonomous Charger** with non-volatile configuration.
- **Constant Current Regulation** Configurable in 10mA steps, 350mA to 2560mA (with a 10mΩ sense resistor), with 1% accuracy. Scalable with sense resistor for larger or smaller currents and batteries. See Table 13.
- **Constant Voltage Regulation** Configurable in 5mV steps from 3.56V to 4.835V with 0.2% accuracy.
- **Constant Power Regulation** MAX17330 measures the pack and battery voltage, as well as charging current to calculate the power in the FET and sense resistor. The IC regulates heat with a configurable threshold (scalable with sense resistor).
- **Temperature Regulation** The IC regulates the FET temperature to a configurable threshold.
- **Supplement Mode** quickly supported with ideal diode.
- **Parallel Cell Management** including cross-charge blocking.
- **Zero Volt Charging/Blocking** and Battery Prequalification.

Table 1 and Table 2 show an example of the charge profile with step charging and JEITA profile changing the target charge current and charge voltage. See nIChgCfg, nVChgCfg, nStepChg, and nTPrtTh1, nTPrtTh2, nTPrtTh3 for configuration details.

Table 1. Charging Current with Step Charging and JEITA

TEMPERATURE	TOO COLD	COLD	ROOM	WARM	HOT	TOO HOT
	<0°C	0°C – 10°C	10°C – 40°C	40°C – 45°C	45°C – 55°C	>55°C
Step 2	No Charging	0.19C	0.25C	0.22C	0.15C	No Charging
Step 1	No Charging	0.38C	0.5C	0.44C	0.31C	No Charging
Step 0	No Charging	0.75C	1C	0.88C	0.625C	No Charging

Table 2. Charging Voltage with Step Charging and JEITA

TEMPERATURE	TOO COLD	COLD	ROOM	WARM	HOT	TOO HOT
	<0°C	0°C – 10°C	10°C – 40°C	40°C – 45°C	45°C – 55°C	>55°C
Step 2	No Charging	4.14V	4.2V	4.18V	4.16V	No Charging
Step 1	No Charging	4.1V	4.16V	4.14V	4.12V	No Charging
Step 0	No Charging	4.06V	4.12V	4.1V	4.08V	No Charging

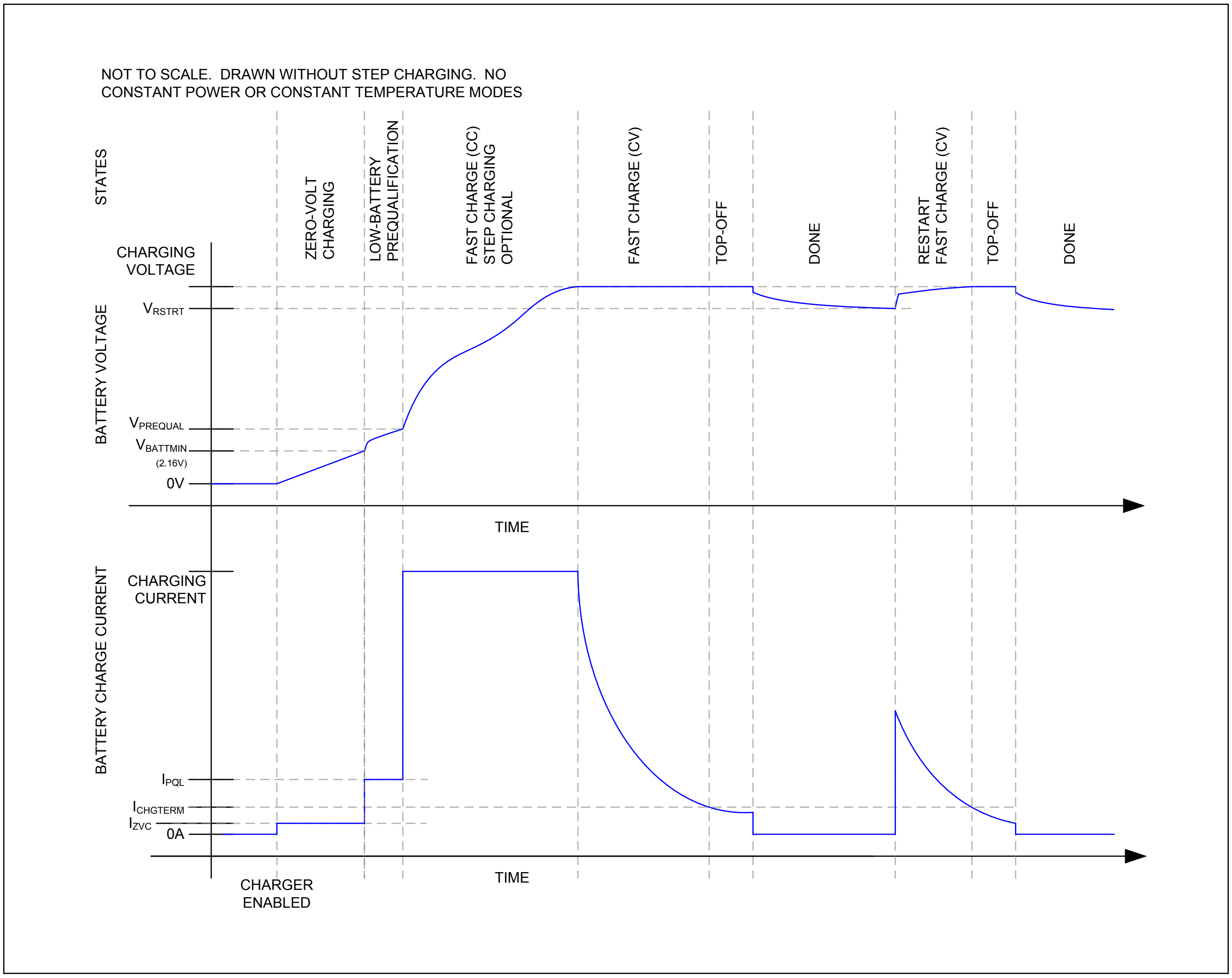


Figure 1. Li+/Li-Poly Charge Profile

$V_{BATTMIN}$: Minimimum operating voltage of MAX17330. If ZVC is used, the battery is charged through the external resistor and ZVC pin until the IC powers on.

$V_{PREQUAL}$: Enabled in nProtCfg. The battery is charged at a limited rate to check if it is safe to charge. Prequal Voltage and Current are set in nChgCfg0 register.

Charging Voltage: The battery is charged to this terminal voltage. The voltage is set in the nVChgCfg register for room temperature and other temperatures.

V_{RSTRT}: Once the CHG FET turns off, the cell voltage drops over time as the cell relaxes. If the cell voltage drops below the restart threshold, the CHG FET turns on and brings the cell voltage up again.

I_{ZVC}: Zero-Volt Charging current. See the *Zero-Volt Charging* section for details.

$I_{CHGTERM}$: The charger goes into top off mode after this current is reached. Top off ends based on a programmable timer. Set IChgTerm in the nIchgTerm register.

I_{PQL}: Prequal Charge Current. Set in nChgCfg0.

Charging Current: Fast Charging current. The current is set in nIChgCfg register for room temperature and other temperatures. In Fast Charge CC state, the regulation current is adjusted by nStepChg.

The charging current and voltage are configured by the Charging Calculation registers. See the *Charging Calculation* section below. The Power Limit, FET Temperature limit, and second thermistor configuration are set in the nChgCfg1 register.

More details on each register are available in the *Charging Registers* section.

Charging Calculation

The MAX17330 calculates the safe charging voltage and charging current depending on the state of the battery and the temperature. The ChargingVoltage and ChargingCurrent registers provide the settings according to the charge profile, cell voltage, and cell temperature. This safe voltage and current, along with the power and temperature limits, are used to control the charge current to the battery.

As the temperature of the battery changes significantly above and below room temperature, most cell manufacturers recommend charging at reduced current and lower termination voltage to assure safety and improve lifespan. The MAX17330 can be configured to change its charging when the temperature crosses the TooCold/Cold/Room/Warm/Hot/TooHot programmable temperature thresholds (see *nTPrtTh1/2/3*). Both charging current and voltage are updated at Cold/Warm/Hot (see *nVChgCfg* and *nIChgCfg*). See Figure 8 and Figure 9.

Additionally, the IC provides step-charging to improve lifespan of the battery and charge speed by applying a step-charging profile (see the *Step-Charging* section) as shown in Figure 2.

Step Charging

A step-charging profile sets three charge voltages, three corresponding charge currents, and manages a state-machine to transit through the stages as shown in Figure 2.

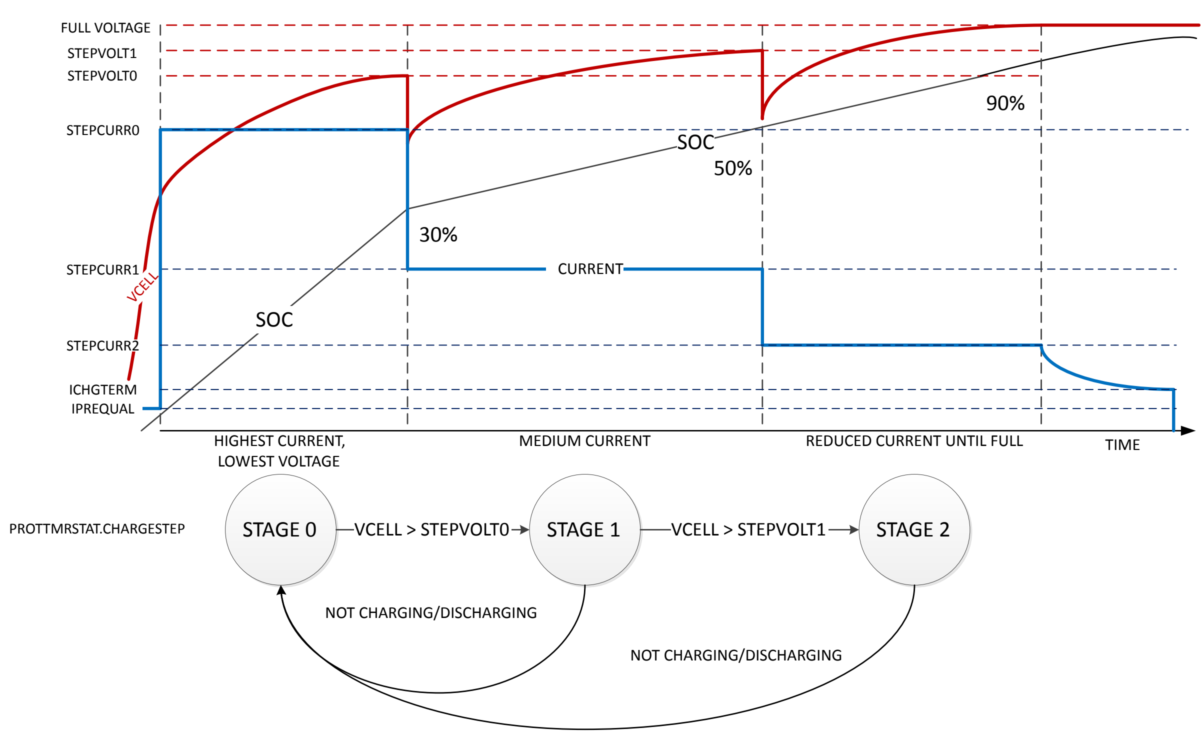


Figure 2. Step-Charging State Machine

As a result, charging takes place in three stages:

1. Stage 0: Highest current, lowest voltage. ChargingCurrent comes from nIChgCfg until VCell > StepVolt0. After VCell > StepVolt0, ChargingCurrent becomes defined by Stage 1.
2. Stage 1: Medium current. ChargingCurrent comes from nIChgCfg x (StepCurr1 + 1)/16, which is a ratio from 1/16 to 16/16 until VCell > StepVolt1. When VCell > StepVolt1, ChargingCurrent becomes defined by Stage 2.
3. Stage 2: Reduced current until full. ChargingCurrent comes from nIChgCfg x (StepCurr2 + 1)/16, which is a ratio from 1/16 to 16/16 until full.

For example, a charge can start with a ChargingCurrent of 2000mA until the cell voltage reaches 4.12V. At that point, the ChargingCurrent is reduced to 1000mA until the cell voltage reaches 4.16V. Then, the ChargingCurrent is further reduced to 500mA where it remains until the current begins to taper off naturally as the cell voltage is regulated at FullVoltage. Disconnecting the charge source, or discharging the battery causes the state-machine to return to Stage 0.

Zero-Volt Charging

When in undervoltage protection, the MAX17330 turns both FETs off and then enters a low quiescent state. After a long time in the undervoltage state, it is possible for the battery voltage to fall below the minimum 2.16V operating voltage, making it unable to wakeup by communications or pushbutton. In this situation, an external charge voltage must be applied to the system side positive node of MAX17330 (PCKP or SYSP) in order to wake up the IC.

Zero-Volt Charge Recovery

In the ZVC circuit configuration (connect ZVC/TH2 PCKP through a current-limiting resistor), even a battery at zero volts can be charged by applying a charger at PCKP. If a secondary protector is used, zero-volt charge recovery must be enabled. If a secondary protector is not used, ZVC/TH2 can be connected to GND, a second thermistor for FET Temperature measurement, or used as an auxiliary voltage measurement pin.

Zero-Volt Charge current can be calculated as $I_{ZVC} = (V_{PCKP} - V_{ZVCDROP})/R_{ZVC}$ as shown in Figure 3. R_{ZVC} must be selected to keep ZVC current below the 50mA rated limit for the ZVC/TH2 pin.

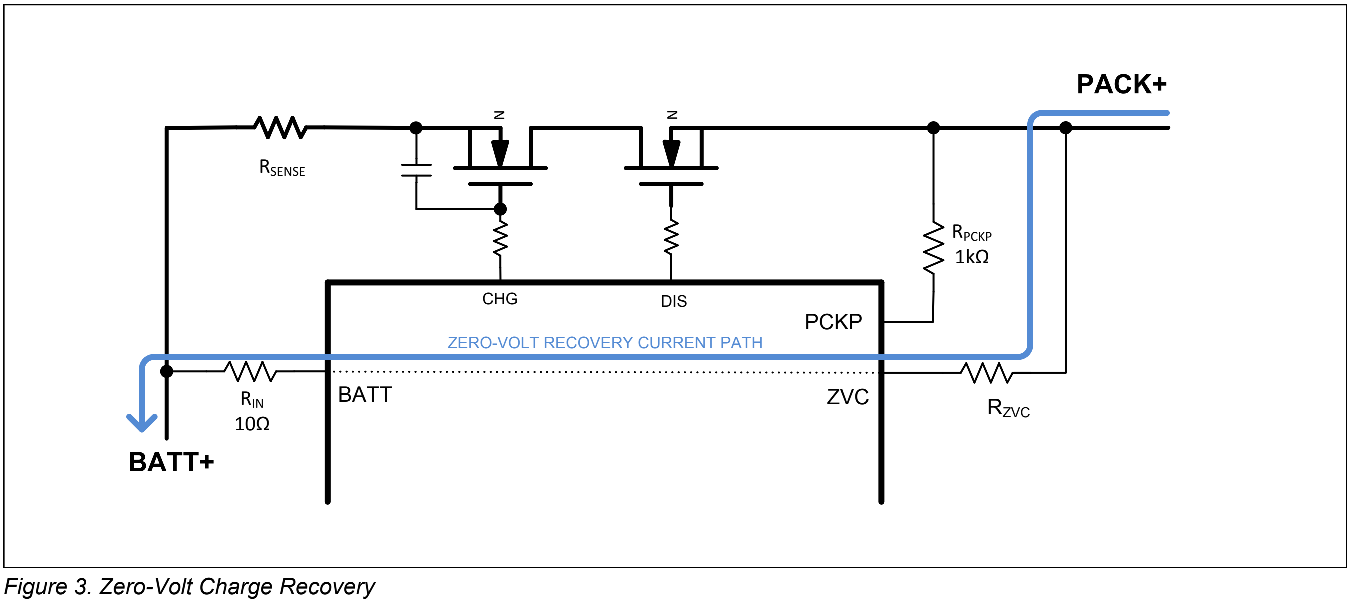


Figure 3. Zero-Volt Charge Recovery

End-of-Charge

The IC stops charging the battery when the current falls below the IChgTerm register value while the VFSOC value is above the FullSOCThr register value. Once the End-of-Charge conditions are met and nDelayCfg.FullTmr delay is reached, the CHG FET is turned off. The IC rejects false end-of-charge events such as application load spikes or early charge source removal. When charge termination is detected, the device learns a new FullCapRep register value based on the RepCap register output. If the old FullCapRep value was too high, it is adjusted on a downward slope near the end-of-charge as defined by the MiscCfg.FUS setting until it reaches RepCap. If the old FullCapRep value was too low, it is adjusted upward to match RepCap. This prevents the calculated state-of-charge from ever reporting a value greater than 100%. See Figure 4.

Charge termination occurs when all of the following conditions are met:

- VFSOC > FullSOCThr
- Current < IChgTerm
- AvgCurrent < IChgTerm
- FullTimer Expired

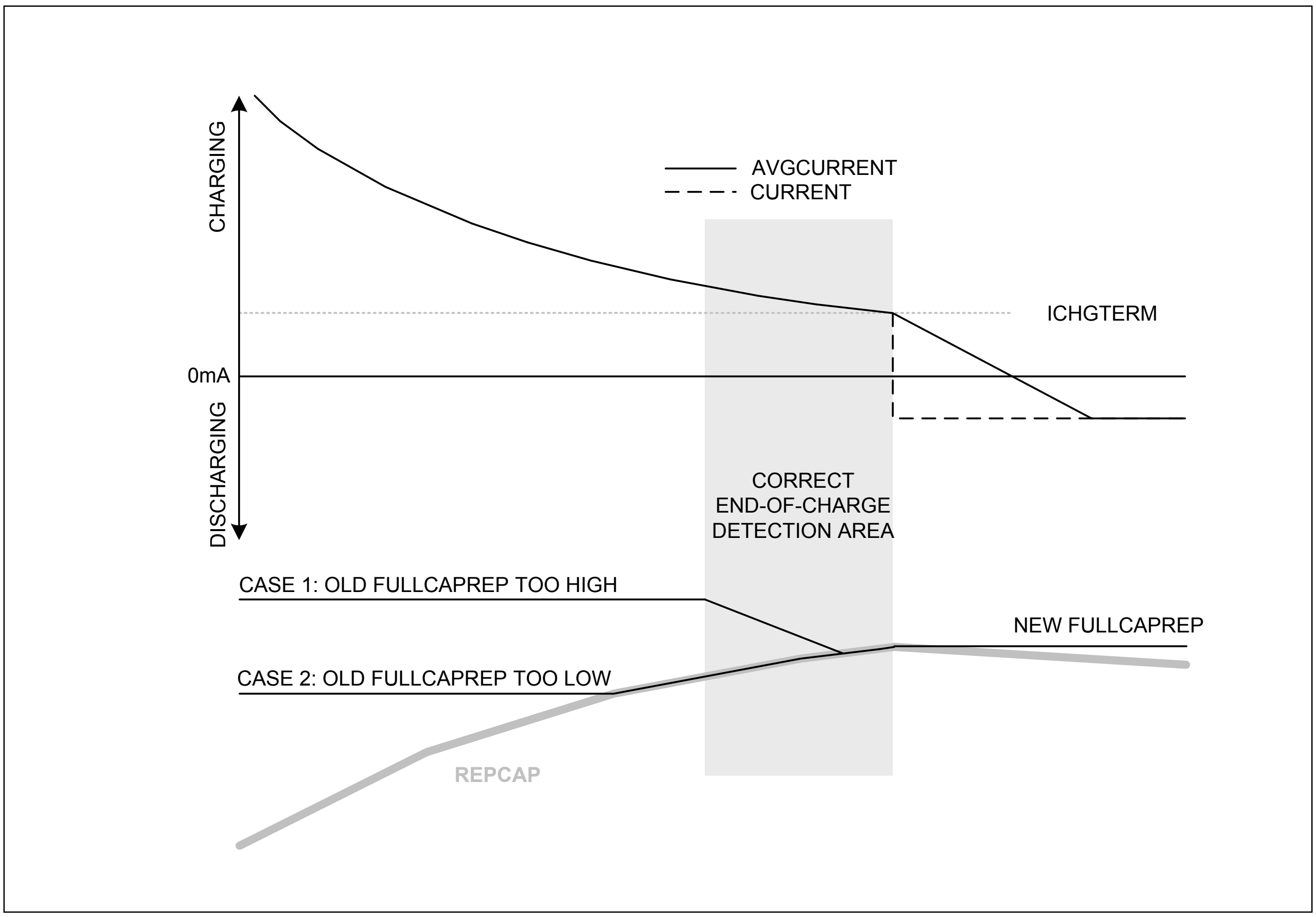


Figure 4. FullCapRep Learning at End-of-Charge

Charger Restart

MAX17330 supports restart charging if the charge source is plugged in for an extended period. This allows topping off the battery for charge lost due to normal self discharge. In the Charge done state, the IC begins charging the battery when VFOCV falls below ChargeVoltage - dFullOCV - 10mV. Set nMiscCfg2.dFullOCV = 0 to disable this function.

Parallel Battery Management

The MAX17330 supports automation to manage parallel charging or discharging of multiple batteries and prevent one battery from charging the other (cross-charging) with the following features and benefits:

- **Converge cell voltages** faster with independent control

- Priority to charge emptiest battery first
- Priority to discharge fullest battery first
- Charge and discharge in parallel once cell voltages converge

- **Prevent cross-charge** to optimize heat and dropout
  - Break-Before-Make Control
    - Charge Source Insertion: Discharge blocking applies before enabling charge.
    - Charger Source Removal: Charge blocking applies before enabling discharge.

Set nPackCfg.ParEn = 1 to enable the Parallel Battery Management functionality. When enabled, a timeout automatically sequences charge/discharge blocking and enabling. The automatic charge-blocking feature allows the host to determine which battery must be charged first and charge only the battery that is selected. Automatic discharge blocking prevents batteries at a higher state from charging batteries at a lower state.

- **To block discharging** while allowing charging, set Config2.BlockDisEn = 1.
- Status.AllowChgB is internally set every 1.4s.

Parallel Applications:

- **Low-Power Parallel Charging** (less than 500mA total). *This application eliminates the USB-charge-controller IC.* A 5V source, such as USB, connects directly (or by USB-switch) to the system as well as both packs. USB detection (such as BC1.2) is often not necessary since all generations of USB provide 500mA. Charging parallel batteries (multiple MAX17330 ICs) with greater than 500mA is not recommended without determining the source capability. The combined charging current should be limited to less than the source capability to prevent oscillations in charging current.

  Example: Two batteries each charging less than 250mA, the CHG FET heat is lower than 350mW across 99% of the charge curve, and less than 200mW for the majority of charging. During charging, a lithium battery exceeds 3.6V for 99% of the charge curve. Heat dissipated = 250mA x (5.0V - 3.6V) = 350mW.

- **High-Power Parallel Charging** (>500mA total). A USB-charger or other configurable DC-DC should deliver voltage about 50mV above the battery voltage. The charging source must operate as a voltage source. By operating near dropout, the MAX17330 has reduced heat in the charge MOSFET. In this application, charge currents beyond 2500mA are achievable.

Host Responsibility (See the *Appendix B: Parallel Cell Management Example*):

- **Declare the presence of charge source**. Only the host has this knowledge. Repeatedly write STATUS = 0xFFDF (AllowChgB = 0). The IC automatically blocks charging if AllowChgB is not cleared repeatedly before the 1.4s timeout. After this timeout, all MAX17330 ICs revert to allow-discharge and block-charge state.
- **Configure to prevent cross-charging.** If cell voltages differ by more than 400mV, configure the higher voltage packs to block discharging. Note that the higher voltage pack resumes discharge when charge-source-presence is no longer indicated.
  - **Determine if emptiest cell can support system load** (3.3V, for example). Until lowest cell charges enough to support system loading, there is a risk of system crash while higher-voltage packs are denied discharge support. Cross-charging should be allowed/tolerated during the limited time associated with VCell less than 3.3V.
  - **Block discharge** on packs identified as cross-charging risk. Set Config2.BlockDis = 1.
- **Manage DC-DC voltage setting** (applications greater than 500mA). Use the dropout-alert and heat-alert of all MAX17330 ICs to decide to step DC-DC voltage up or down.

Table 3. Parallel Management FET Logic

PAREN	BLOCKDIS	ALLOWCHGB	CHG FET	DIS FET
0	x	x	NORMAL	NORMAL
1	0	0	NORMAL	NORMAL
1	0	1 (timeout)	BLOCK READY	NORMAL
1	1	0	NORMAL	BLOCK READY
1	1	1 (timeout)	BLOCK READY	NORMAL

In the BLOCK READY state, the CHG or DIS FET is ready to block and is turned off if charging or discharging current is observed. In the NORMAL case, the CHG/DIS FET is controlled by standard protection and charging control.

Ideal Diode Behavior

While the CHG FET is in the OFF state (CHG fault present) or in regulation mode (Charging), if a discharge current is requested from the battery, the MAX17330 provides automatic control to operate the CHG FET as a 30mV Ideal-Diode using a comparator for fast response.

The CHG FET:

- Quickly turns on upon discharge detection
- Quickly turns off upon charge detection

Upon discharge, the CHG FET is fully enhanced to prevent voltage drop when a comparator detects $V_{PCKP} < V_{BATT}$ - 30mV (typ). This prevents the 600mV voltage drop and associated heat during discharging.

Upon charge, a current-sense comparator detects charging when the sense voltage exceeds 1mV (typ) and turns off the CHG FET. The MAX17330 then decides whether or not to start or resume charging. Charge faults continue to block charging. If there are no faults, the MAX17330 starts or resumes regulated charging. See Figure 5.

The ideal diode operates during discharge as well as charge regulation. During charge regulation, the system can briefly and repeatedly overload the charge source, demanding the battery to briefly support a load pulse. The charging regulation is paused until the load pulse finishes, and the MAX17330 resumes charging regulation.

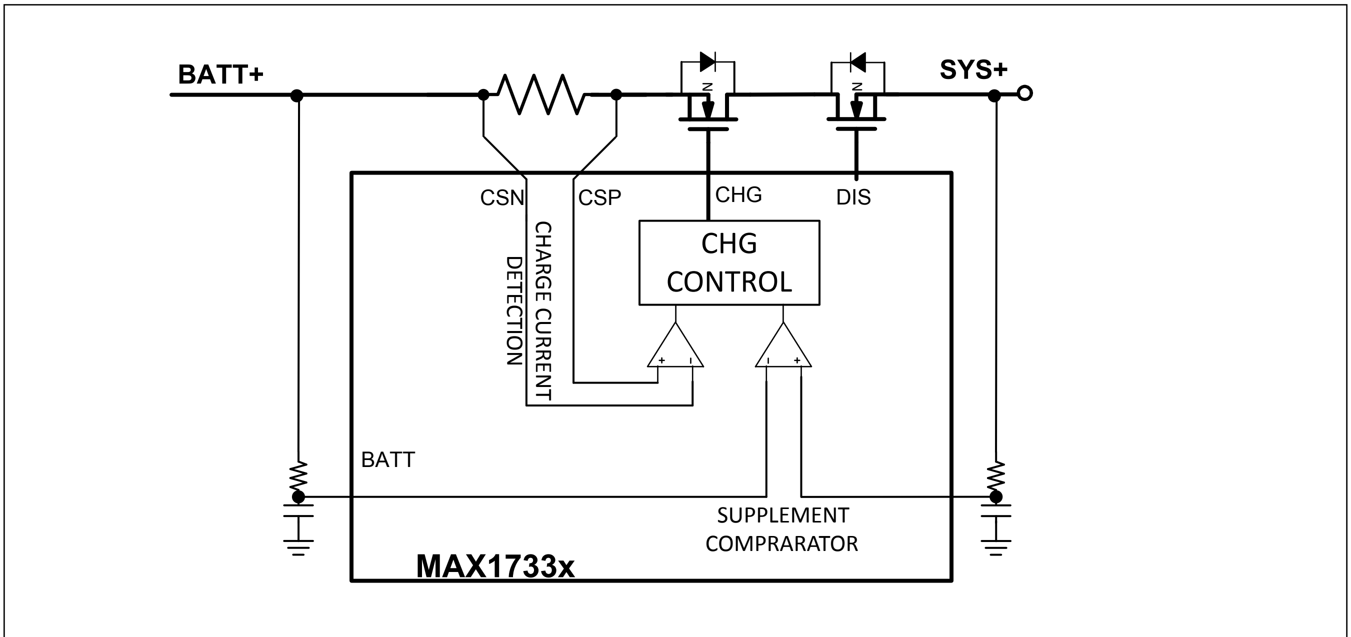


Figure 5. Supplement and Charging Comparators

The IC uses these comparators combined with additional information to detect charger presence and absence. During discharge, any charge faults, such as overvoltage fault or overtemperature fault, are preserved. The CHG FET is turned on fully to allow discharging and returned to the OFF state when a charger is detected. See Figure 6.

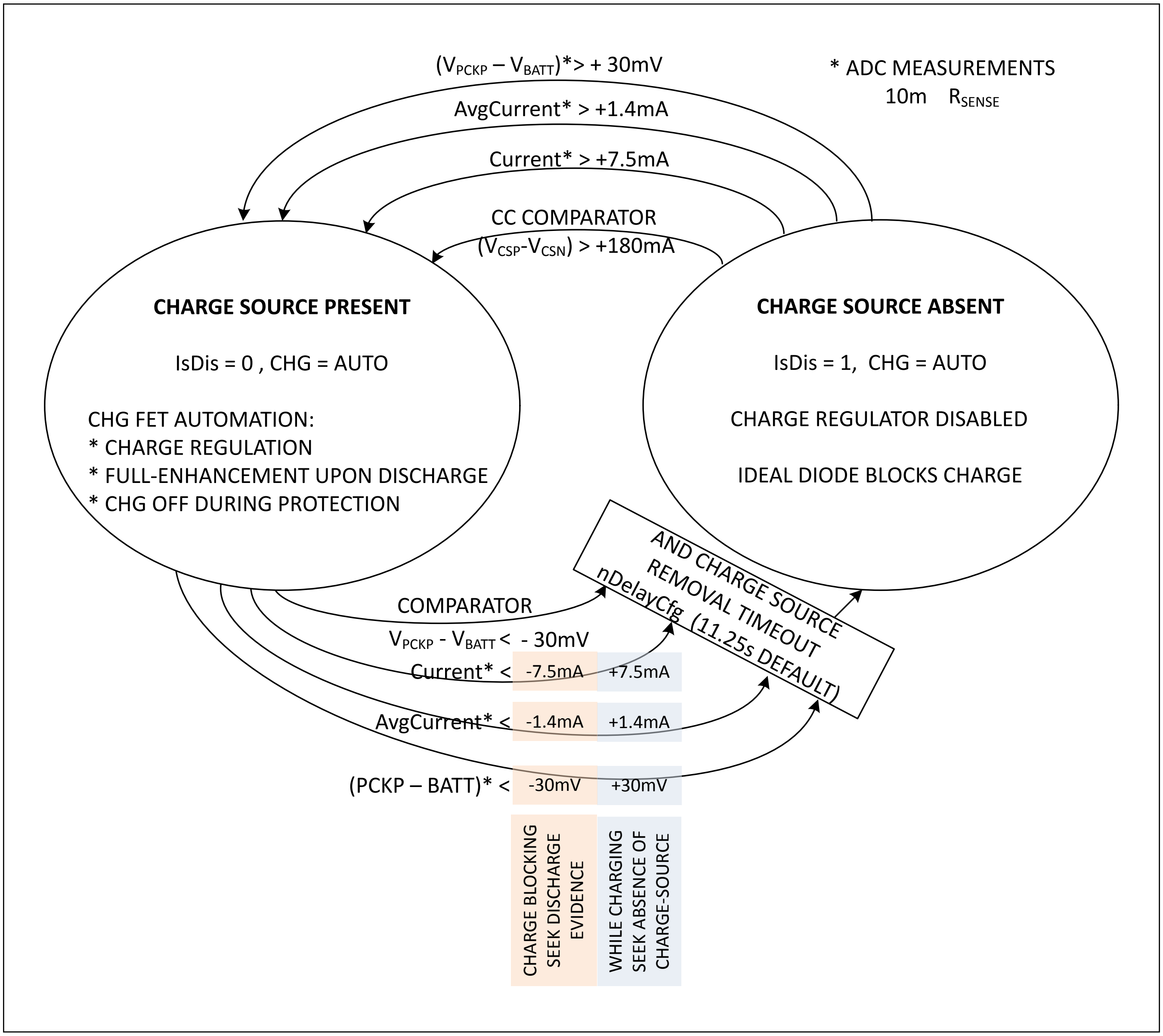


Figure 6. Charging and Discharging States

ADC Measurements corresponding to Current, AvgCurrent, and PCKP enhance the accuracy of charger detection. The charge source removal timeout waits for 11.25s (configurable with nDelayCfg.ChgWDT) of charge source absence before turning off the charge regulation. This allows charging to quickly resume after many seconds of battery-supplement when the system load exceeds charge source current-limit.

nProtMiscTh.CurrDet configures the previous current-detection thresholds, corresponding with ±1.4mA and ±7.5mA (on 10mΩ). Analog Devices recommends these settings which are optimized according to the ADC noise.

Table 4. AvgCurrDet Threshold when using 10mΩ and Default nProtMiscTh.CurrDet = 7.5mA

	AVGCURRENT FILTER CONFIGURATION (nFilterCfg.nCurr)

Table 4. AvgCurrDet Threshold when using 10mΩ and Default nProtMiscTh.CurrDet = 7.5mA (continued)

	1 (0.7s)	2 (1.4s)	3 (2.8s)	4 (5.6s)	5 (11.25s)	6 (22.5s)	7 (45s)	8 (90s)
Active (0.351s)	4.22mA	2.34mA	2.34mA	**1.41mA (default)**	1.41mA	0.94mA	0.94mA	0.7mA
Hibernate (1.4s)	7.5mA	4.2mA	4.2mA	2.3mA	2.3mA	1.4mA	1.4mA	0.94mA
Hibernate (2.8s)	7.5mA	7.5mA	7.5mA	4.2mA	4.2mA	2.3mA	2.3mA	1.4mA

The fast responses in Table 4 correspond with the 0.351s ADC update rate. The more accurate slow responses correspond with the AvgCurrent filter delay configuration.

Protector

Simple protection schemes are available to protect a battery from exceeding the safe levels. These schemes include protection for overdischarge current, short-circuit current, overcharge current, undervoltage, and overvoltage. The next level of protection offers smart protection schemes which include protection for under OCV (SmartEmpty), long overdischarge current, overtemperature limits for charge and discharge, undertemperature charge limits, and charge-done protection. The MAX17330 provides all of these simple and smart protection schemes with programmable thresholds and programmable timer delays for each fault.

The MAX17330 provides additional protection functionality beyond these schemes as follows:

Discharging Protection Functionality:

- **Overcurrent:** (see *nODSCCfg* and *nODSCTh*)
  - **Fast Short-Circuit (70µs to 985µs):** The short-circuit comparator is programmable from 5.12mV to 158.72mV with delay programmable from 70µs to 985µs.
  - **Medium (1ms to 15ms):** The overdischarge current comparator is programmable from 2.55mV to 79.36mV with delay programmable from 1ms to 15ms.
  - **Slow (351ms to 35s):** Slow overdischarge protection is programmable from 0mV to 51.2mV in 0.2mV steps with delay programmable from 351ms to 35s (see *nDelayCfg* and *nIPrtTh1*).
- **Overtemperature:**
  - **Hot (OTPD—Overtemperature Discharge):** Discharge overtemperature (OTPD, see *nProtMiscTh*) is separately programmable from charge overtemperature (OTPC). OTPD is typically a higher temperature than OTPC, since charging while hot is more hazardous than discharging. OTPD is programmable in 1°C steps, with a programmable timer (see *nDelayCfg*).
  - **Die-Hot:** The MAX17330 measures die temperature as well as a thermistor's temperature. Since the IC is generally located close to the external FETs, the die temperature can indicate when the FETs are overheating. This separately programmable threshold (see *nProtMiscTh*) blocks both charging and discharging.
  - **Permanent-Fail-Hot:** When a severe overtemperature is detected, the fault is recorded into NVM and permanently disables the charge and discharge FETs and blows the three-terminal fuse if enabled.
- **Too Cold Discharge:** If enabled, the IC blocks discharging if the cell temperature is too low. It prevets discharge of a cell when cell impedance due to temperautre is too large to support the application load.
- **Undervoltage (UVP):** Undervoltage is protected by three thresholds: UVP (undervoltage protect), UVShdn (undervoltage shutdown), and UOCVP (under OCV protect—*SmartEmpty*). UOCVP provides a deep-discharge-state protection that is immune from load and cell impedance/resistance variations.

Charging Protection Functionality:

- **Overvoltage Protection (OVP):** Overvoltage protection is programmable with 10mV resolution (see *nOVPrtTh*). Temperature-region dependent OVP protection is also provided for cold/room/warm and hot temperature regions (see nVChgCfg). OVP detection is debounced with a programmable timer (see *nDelayCfg*). An additional higher OVP permanent failure threshold is programmable, which records any excessive OVP into NVM and permanently blocks charging.
- **Charge Temperature Protection:** Temperature protection thresholds are debounced with a programmable timer (see *nDelayCfg*).

- **Hot (OTPC):** Charging temperature protection is programmable with 1°C resolution (see *nTPrtTh1*) and 1°C hysteresis.
- **Cold (UTP):** Charging is blocked at cold, programmable with 1°C resolution (see *nTPrtTh1*) and 1°C hysteresis.

- **Overcharge-Current Protection:**
  - **Fast:** Overcharge current is detected by a programmable hardware comparator and debounce timer between 0mV to 39.375mV and 1ms to 15ms thresholds.
  - **Slow:** A lower and slower overcharge current protection ensures that more moderate high currents do not persist for a long time. With a 10mΩ sense resistor, this is programmable up to 5.12A in 40mA steps, with an additional delay programmable between 0.35s and 22.5s. Additionally, with *nNVCfg1*.enJP = 1, this overcurrent protection threshold is modulated according to temperature region (see nIChgCfg).
- **Charge-Done:** If enabled, the IC blocks charge whenever charge termination is detected until discharging or charger removal is eventually detected.
- **Charger-Communication Timeout:** If enabled, the IC turns off the charge FET during charging if the host has stopped communicating beyond a timeout configurable from 11s to 3min. In systems which consult the battery for prescribing the charge current or charge voltage (especially to apply JEITA thresholds or step-charging), this feature is useful to protect against operating system crash or shutdown.
- **Overcharge-Capacity Fault:** If the feature is enabled and the charge session delivers more charge (coulombs) to the battery than the expected full design capacity, charging is blocked. This threshold is programmable as a percentage (see *nProtMiscTh*.QOvflwTh) beyond the design capacity.

Other Faults:

- **Nonvolatile CheckSum Failure:** If enabled (*nNVCfg1*.enProtChkSm), the MAX17330 blocks charge and discharge when startup checksum of protector NVM does not match the value stored in nProtCfg2.CheckSum.

Other Protection Functionality:

- **Zero-Volt Charging:** The IC is able to begin charging when the cell has depleted to 2.16V (ZVC disabled) or from 0V (ZVC enabled). See the *Zero-Volt Charging* section for more details.
- **Overdischarge-Removal Detection:** Following any overdischarge current fault, the IC tests for load removal by sourcing 30μA into PCKP after turning off the discharge FET. Load removal is detected when PCKP exceeds 1V. This low threshold is intentionally below the startup voltage of most ICs in order to allow active loads by external ICs while rejecting passive loads by resistors (short-circuit, failed components, etc.).
- **Charger Removal Detection:** Following any charge fault, the IC measures PCKP to detect the removal of the offending charger after turning off the charge FET. Charger removal is detected when PCKP falls below BATT - nOVPrtTh.ChgDetTh or whenever discharge current is detected.
- **Battery Internal Self-Discharge Detection:** The IC measures the internal self-discharge of the battery that might indicate health or safety problems. The IC alerts the system or turns off the charge and discharge FETs when a leakage is detected above the configurable threshold. See the *Battery Internal Self-Discharge* section for more details.
- **Ideal-Diode Control:** During any charge fault, the charge FET turns on when a discharge current is detected. See the *Ideal Diode* section for more details. The discharge FET behaves the same way during discharge faults to block discharging, yet turns on during charging. This ideal diode behavior reduces the heat and voltage drop associated with the body diode during protection faults.

Protection Fault Reporting:

- **Protection Fault Status:** Each charge and discharge fault state is latched in the ProtStatus register. When the fault is cleared, the corresponding bit is cleared.
- **Protection Fault Alerts:** The ProtAlrt register latches the status of any previous faults detected by the device. Once a fault is detected, the corresponding bit remains set until it is cleared by the host. Additionally, the Status.ProtAlrt bit is set when any ProtAlrt bit is set.
- **Protection Fault Logging:** The nFaultLog register also indicates which protection events happened during each history log period.

Charging Regulation Registers: The *ChargingVoltage* and *ChargingCurrent* registers control and display the calculated target charging voltage and current. This includes the following information which is generally associated with a particular battery and can be stored in the battery with the MAX17330:

- **Factory Recommended Charging Current and Voltage:** This is useful when a system involves multiple battery vendors, swappable batteries, aftermarket batteries, or legacy system support.
- **Charging Modifications According to Battery Temperature:** Significantly above and below room temperature, most cell manufacturers recommend charging at reduced current and lower termination voltage to assure safety and improve lifespan. The MAX17330 modulates its settings according to TooCold/Cold/Room/Warm/Hot/TooHot programmable temperature regions (see *nTPrtTh1*/*nTPrtTh2*/*nTPrtTh3*). Both charging current and voltage are modulated at Cold/Warm/Hot, targeting lower than Room (see *nVChgCfg* and *nIChgCfg*).
- **Step-Charging:** A common practice to balance lifespan and charge speed is to apply step-charging profiles (see the *Step-Charging* section). The MAX17330 supports three programmable steps with programmable charge currents and voltages.

At a high level, the MAX17330 protector has state machine as shown in Figure 7. Each charge and discharge fault state is latched in the *ProtStatus* register, where each fault obeys a separate instance of the state machine shown in Figure 7. Any single charge fault opens the charge FET to block charge current (charge faults are OR'd together). All charge faults must be released to allow charge to resume (charge fault release conditions are AND'd together). The behavior is similar for blocking discharge.

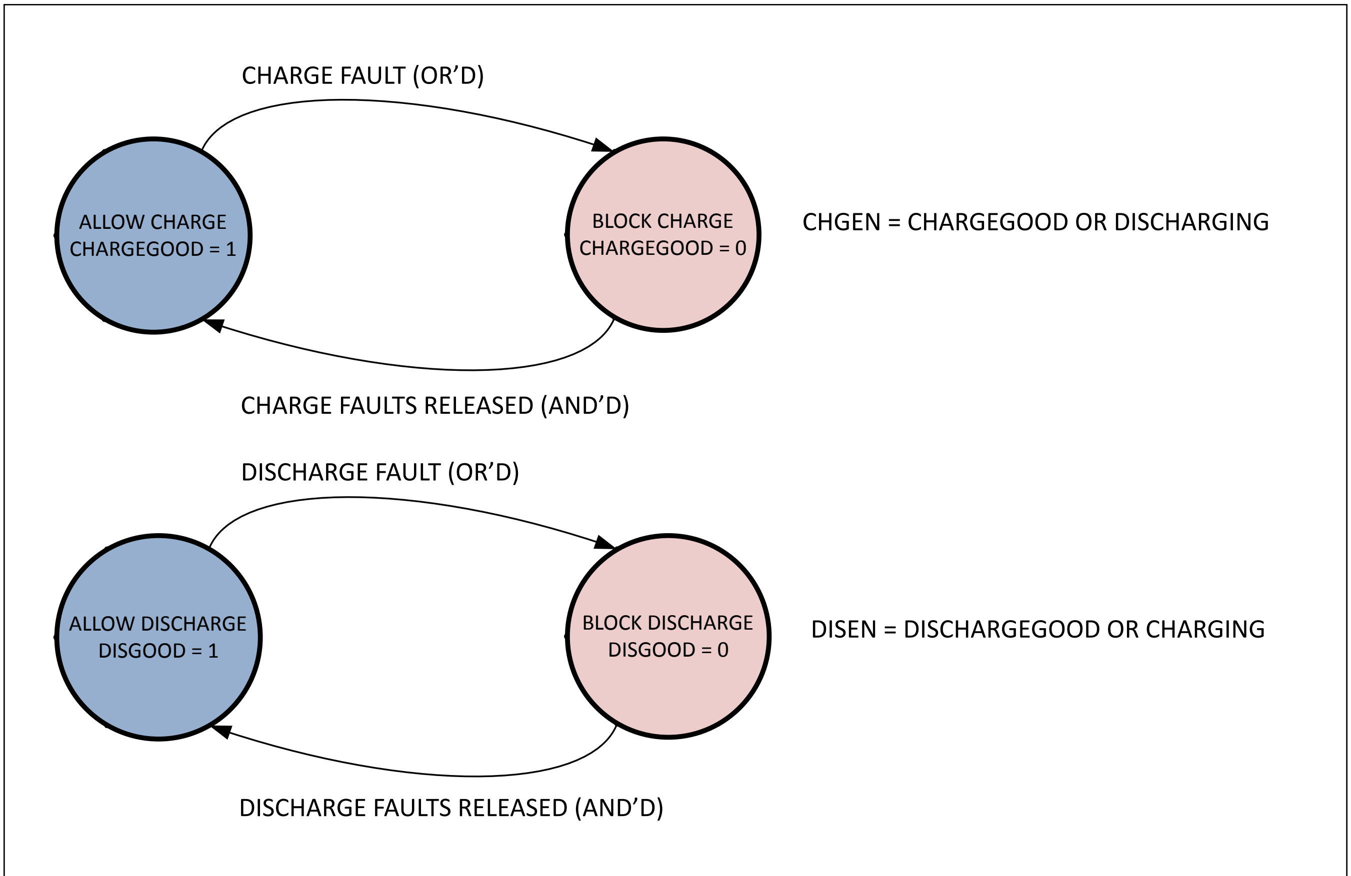


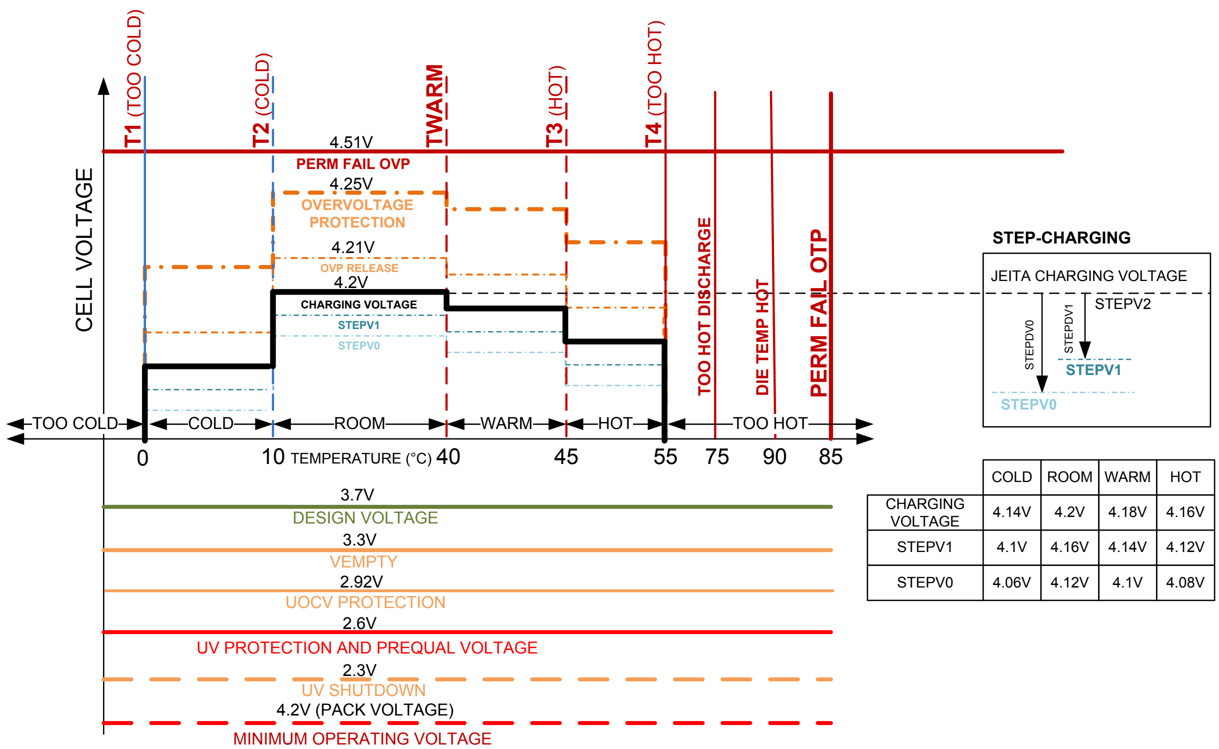
Figure 7. Simplified Protector State Machine

The IC includes a write protection and a permanent locking function. The write protection prevents accidental overwrites of protection parameters. This protection must be cleared before updating any registers and should be set after configuration changes are made. The permanent locks prevent intentional or malicious tampering and should be enabled after development is complete and the battery pack is ready to ship in production. See the *Memory Locks and Write Protection* section for more details.

The protector registers are summarized by their protection function in Table 5 and are graphically shown across the various temperature ranges in Figure 8 and Figure 9.

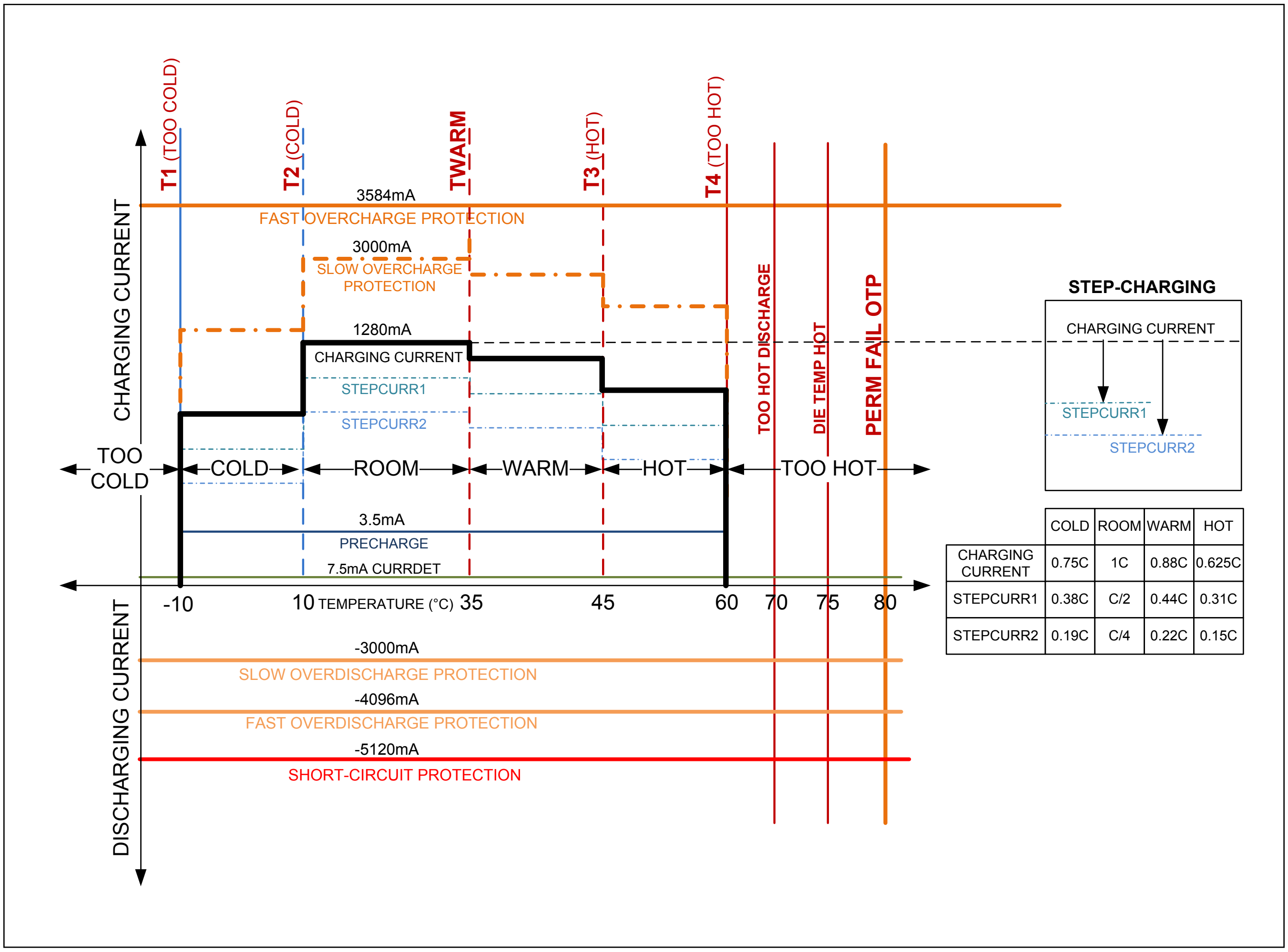
Table 5. Summary of Protector Registers by Function

FUNCTION	REGISTER
VOLTAGE THRESHOLDS	
Permanent Fail Overvoltage Protection	nOVPrtTh
Overvoltage Protection	nVChgCfg, nOVPrtTh
Overvoltage Protection Release	nOVPrtTh
UnderOCV Protection	nUVPrtTh
Undervoltage Protection	nUVPrtTh
Undervoltage Shutdown	nUVPrtTh
Prequalification Voltage	nChgCfg0
CURRENT THRESHOLDS	
Fast Overcharge Protection	nODSCTh, nODSCCfg
Slow Overcharge Protection	nIPrtTh1
Slow Overdischarge Protection	nIPrtTh1
Fast Overdischarge Protection	nODSCTh, nODSCCfg
Short Circuit Protection	nODSCTh, nODSCCfg
Charging Detected	nProtMiscTh
Discharging Detected	nProtMiscTh
Temperature Thresholds	nTPrtTh1, nTPrtTh2, nTPrtTh3, nProtMiscTh
Fault Timers	nDelayCfg
CHARGING REGULATION	
Charging Voltage	nVChgCfg
Charging Current	nIChgCfg
Precharge Current	nOVPrtTh
Step Charging	nStepChg
Protection Status/Configuration	nProtCfg, ProtStatus, nBattStatus



	COLD	ROOM	WARM	HOT
CHARGING VOLTAGE	4.14V	4.2V	4.18V	4.16V
STEPV1	4.1V	4.16V	4.14V	4.12V
STEPV0	4.06V	4.12V	4.1V	4.08V

Figure 8. Programmable Voltage Thresholds



	COLD	ROOM	WARM	HOT
CHARGING CURRENT	0.75C	1C	0.88C	0.625C
STEPCURR1	0.38C	C/2	0.44C	0.31C
STEPCURR2	0.19C	C/4	0.22C	0.15C

Figure 9. Programmable Current Thresholds

Battery Internal Self-Discharge Detection (ISD)

A healthy lithium-ion/polymer battery has a very high coulombic-efficiency, typically greater than 99.9% (defined as discharge mAh vs. charge mAh). Some portion of the charge capacity can be lost by internal self-discharge. This includes natural aging, which is exacerbated if the battery stays at a high temperature and/or high state for long periods of time. However, in a damaged battery, additional capacity can be lost (unavailable for discharge), and some portion of this reflects permanent capacity loss. Unusual self-discharge in a lithium-ion/polymer battery might indicate health or safety problems.

The MAX17330 internal self-discharge (ISD) detection feature measures battery leakage and provides the following functions:

- **Leakage Measurement:** The LeakCurrRep register outputs the milliampere leakage measured across several days and multiple charge termination events.
  - Accurate leakage detection
  - Low ppm false-positive rate at a 3mA threshold
  - Detection during normal use
    - No discharge depth or duration constraints
    - Requires at least four full events, each separated by 20 hours or more
- **Leakage Log:** Leakage measurements are recorded in the battery-life-logging data. This reveals leakage versus time for any returned battery or for managing deployed packs.
- **Leakage Alert:** If enabled, an LDET alert (see *ProtAlrt*) is asserted when LeakCurrRep exceeds the programmable alert threshold.
- **Leakage Fault:** If enabled, the protector disconnects the battery when LeakCurrRep exceeds the programmable fault threshold.

Example of Internal Self-Discharge Detection

Figure 10 shows the current leakage detected by the MAX17330 as a result of placing a 909Ω resistor across a cell to emulate a battery with internal self-discharge over various temperatures.

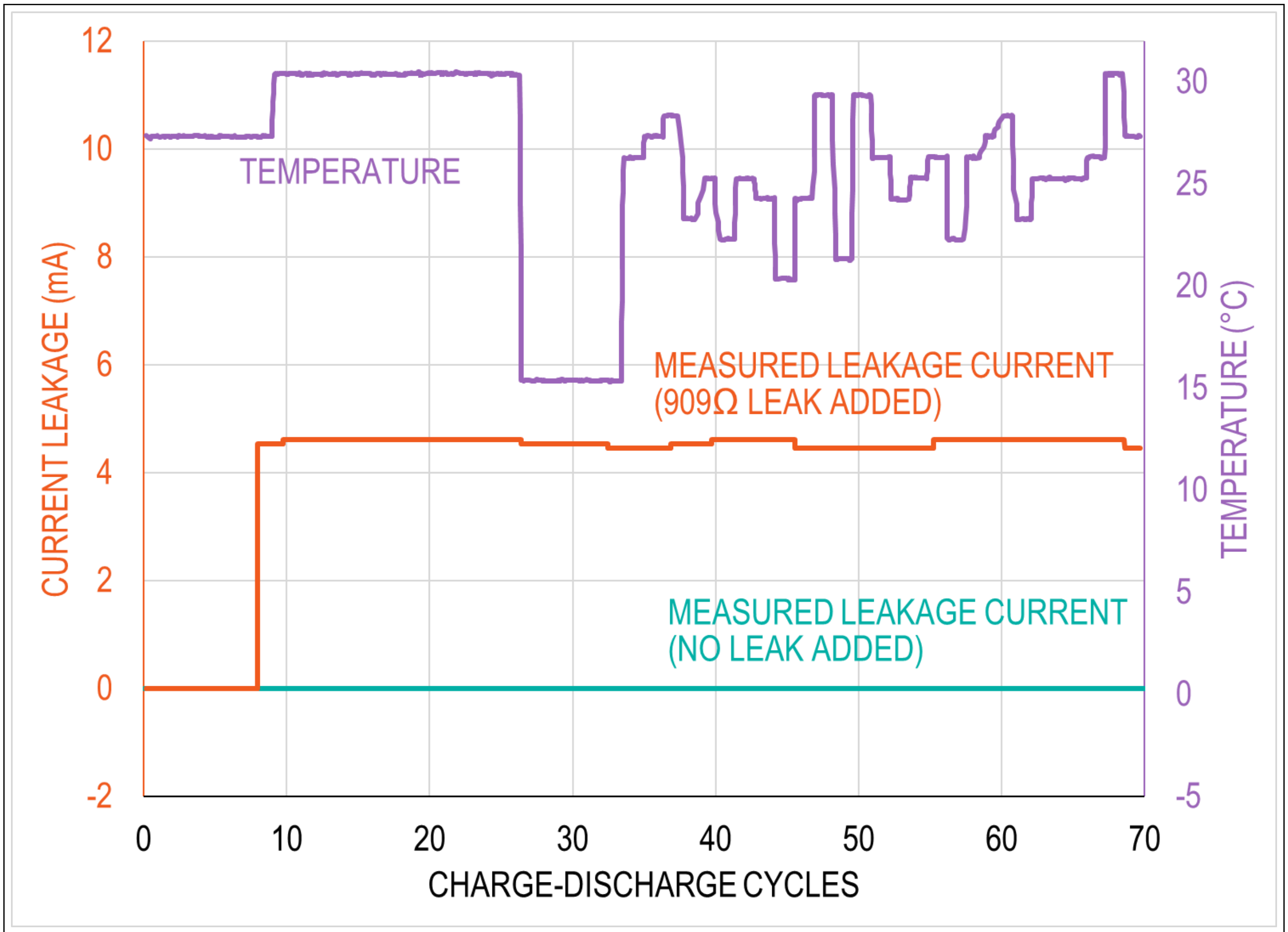


Figure 10. Example of Internal Self-Discharge with Temperature Variation

Configuring ISD

Contact Maxim Integrated for configuring the ISD Feature. See the *Battery Internal Self-Discharge Registers* section for configuration details.

Protector Thresholds

The MAX17330 provides a variety of programmable protector thresholds that are stored in nonvolatile memory. These thresholds include voltage, current, temperature, and timer delays.

Voltage Thresholds

All voltage thresholds of the MAX17330 are shown graphically in Figure 8 and in table form with details of which bits and registers create the various thresholds in Table 6. The description of each register provides additional guidance for selection of the register value.

Table 6. Voltage Thresholds

NAME	DESCRIPTION	CONFIGURATION REGISTERS	EXAMPLE
Permanent Fail Overvoltage		nOVPrtTh.OVPPermFail	4.4V
Overvoltage (with 4xJEITA)	Programmable overvoltage at each JEITA band. Programmable 10mV resolution from 3.9V to 4.88V. Programmable delay.	ChargeVoltage[temp] + nOVPrtTh.dOVP	(4.1V/ 4.20V/ 4.18V/ 4.15V) +50mV
Overvoltage Release	Programmable release hysteresis	Overvoltage - nOVPrtTh.dOVPR	(4.15V/ 4.25V/ 4.23V/ 4.2V) -10mV
ChargeVoltage-Room	ChargingVoltage() output	nVChgCfg.Room	4.20V
ChargeVoltage-Hot	ChargingVoltage() output	nVChgCfg.Hot	4.15V
ChargeVoltage-Warm	ChargingVoltage() output	nVChgCfg.Warm	4.18V
ChargeVoltage-Cold	ChargingVoltage() output	nVChgCfg.Cold	4.10V
DesignVoltage	For information only, no action	nDesignVolt	3.7V
EmptyVoltage	For fuel gauge only (not related to protection)	nVEmpty	3.0V
Undervoltage Release	Charger applied		
Under OCV Protection (SmartEmpty)	Programmable under-OCV 40mV steps UVP to UVP + 1.28V.	nUVPrtTh.UOCVP	3.2V
Undervoltage Protection	Programmable undervoltage 20mV steps 2.2V to 3.4V. Gauging and communications work until undervoltage-shutdown	nUVPrtTh.UVP	2.7V
Undervoltage Shutdown	Gauging and communications work until undervoltage-shutdown	nUVPrtTh.UVShdn	2.5V
Undervoltage Lockout			2.11V typ, 2.16V max
Zero-Voltage Charging			0V

Current Thresholds

All of the current thresholds of the MAX17330 are shown graphically in Figure 9 and in table form with details of each threshold in Table 7. The description of each register provides additional guidance for selection of the register value.

Table 7. Current Threshold Summary

CURRENT	ACTION	RELEASE	DETAILS
Overcharge Current (fast)	CHG off	Discharging or charger removal detection	Threshold 5-bit, 1.25mV steps to 38.75mV. Delay programmable 4-bit, 1ms to 15ms in 0.9ms steps.
Overcharge Current (slow with 4xJEITA)	CHG off		Programmable 0.4mV steps to 51.2mV. Delay programmable 351ms to 45s. Separate thresholds for 4 out of 6 JEITA segments.
Overdischarge Current (fast)	DIS off	Charging or load removal detection	5-Bit, 2.5mV steps to 77.5mV. Delay programmable 4-bit, 1ms to 15ms in 0.9ms steps.
Overdischarge Current (slow)	DIS off		Programmable 0.4mV steps to 51.2mV. Delay programmable 351ms to 45s.
Short-Circuit Current	DIS off		5-Bit, 5mV steps to 155mV. Delay programmable 4-bit, 70µs steps to 985µs.

Table 7. Current Threshold Summary (continued)

Charging Detected	Normal	—	Current > CurrDet or AvgCurrent > AvgCurrDet or PCKP > BATT + 0.15V to release overdischarge protection.
Discharging Detected	Normal	—	Current < -CurrDet or AvgCurrent < -AvgCurrDet or PCKP < BATT + 0.15V (falling-edge) indicates discharging. When discharging is detected, overcharge current faults release. Other charge faults such as OVP, OTP, and UTP remain set, however the CHG FET turns on to prevent the heat and voltage drop associated with the 0.6V CHG FET body diode. See the *Ideal Diode Behavior* section for more details. An OVP fault remains remembered (unreleased) until voltage falls and discharging is also detected.

Overcurrent Protection

The MAX17330 provides three levels of protection for overdischarge current events: fast, medium, and slow as shown in Figure 11. The MAX17330 also provides fast and slow levels of protection for overcharge current protection. The fast and medium levels of protection are provided by comparators and the slow levels are based on the ADC readings.

The MAX17330 maintains the protection until the source of the fault has been removed. Overcharge protection fault releases when pack voltage falls below BATT + 0.1V (edge, not level) while the IC tests charger removal by applying a 40kΩ pull down from PCKP to GND (during any charger fault). Overdischarge current (fast or slow) or short-circuit current protection faults release when PCKP rises above 1V, while the IC applies a 30μA source current test to PCKP.

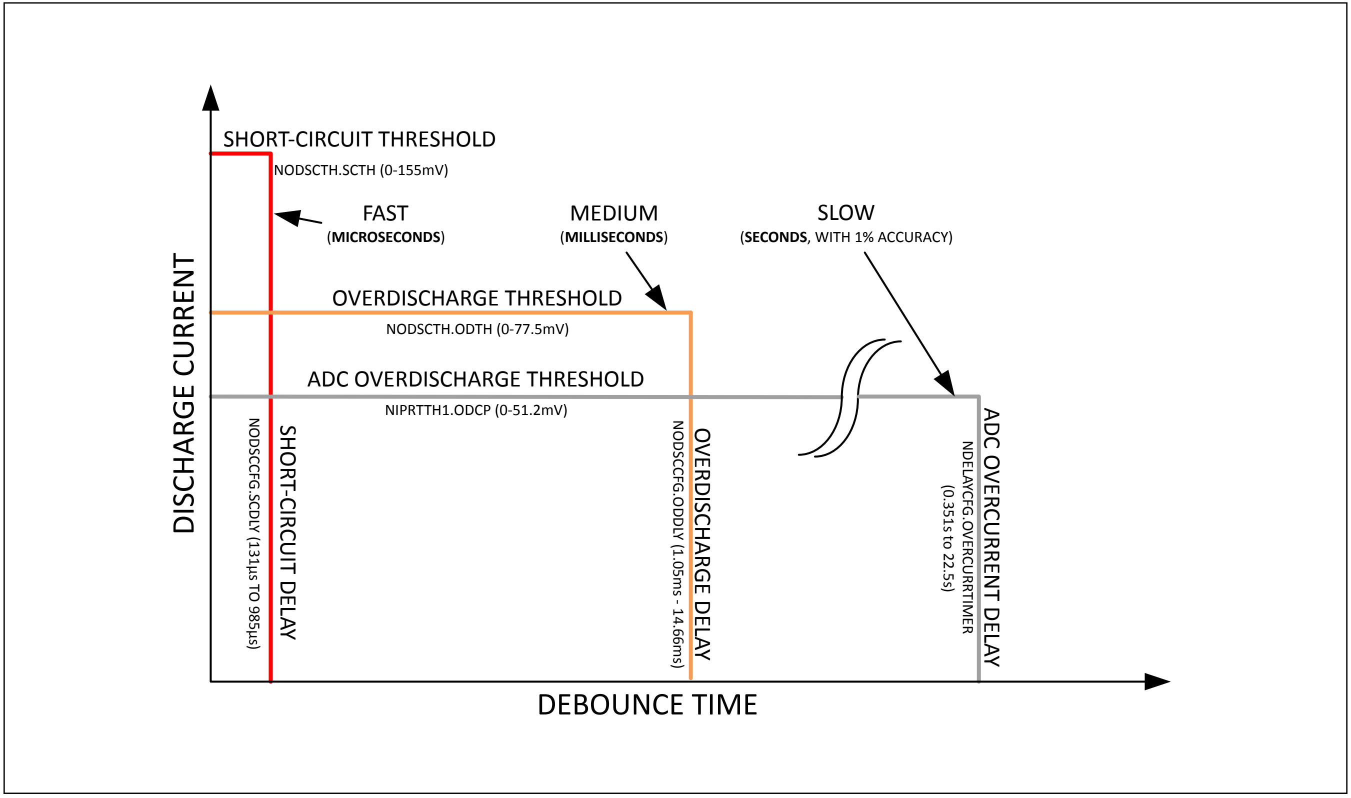


Figure 11. Fast, Medium, and Slow Overdischarge Protection

Fast Overcurrent Comparators

The MAX17330 contains three programmable fast overcurrent comparators called Overdischarge (OD), Short-Circuit (SC), and Overcharge (OC) that allow control protection for overdischarge current, short-circuit current, and overcharge current. These comparators have programmable threshold levels and programmable debounced delays. See Figure 12.

The OD comparator threshold can be programmed from 0mV to -77.5mV with 2.5mV resolution (0A to -7.75A with 0.25A resolution using 10mΩ sense resistor). The OC comparator threshold can be programmed from 0mV to 38.75mV with 1.25mV resolution (0A to 38.75A with 0.125A resolution using a 10mΩ sense resistor). The OD and OC comparators have a programmable delay from 1.05ms to 14.6ms with 0.97ms resolution. The SC comparator threshold can be programmed from 0mV to -155mV with 5mV resolution (0A to -15.5A with 0.5A resolution using a 10mΩ sense resistor) and has a programmable delay from 70µs to 985µs with a 61µs resolution.

The nODSCTh register sets the threshold levels where each comparator trips. The nODSCCfg register enables each comparator and sets their debounce delays. The nODSCCfg register also maintains indicator flags of which comparator has been tripped. These register settings are maintained in nonvolatile memory if the nNVCfg1.enODSC bit is set.

Slow Overcurrent Protection

The MAX17330 provides programmable thresholds for the slow overdischarge current protection (ODCP) and overcharge current protection (OCCP). ODCP and OCCP can be configured to provide different levels of protection across the six temperature zones as shown in Figure 9.

Overcurrent Comparator Diagram

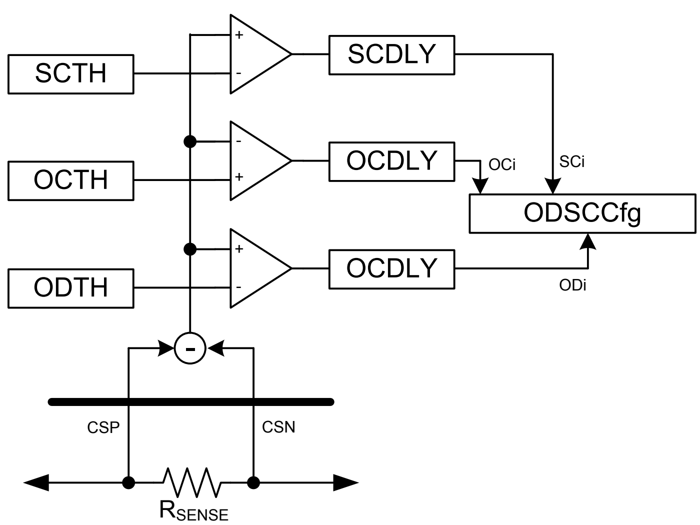


Figure 12. Overcurrent Comparator Diagram

Temperature Thresholds

The six temperature zones shown in Figure 8 and Figure 9 can be configured in the nTPrtTh1, nTPrtTh2, and nTPrtTh3 registers.

Other Thresholds

The MAX17330 also supports additional thresholds for suspending/releasing charge, detecting permanent failures of the charge and discharge FETs, and providing the recommended charging prescription as described in Table 8.

Table 8. Other Thresholds

THRESHOLD	ACTION	CONDITIONS
Charge Suspend	CHG off	FullDet Fault—if enabled (nProtCfg.FullEn) and charge termination criteria (see ICHGTerm and charge termination). ChgWDT Fault—if enabled (nProtCfg.ChgWDTEn) and communications timeout.
Charge-Suspend Release	Normal	FullDet Release—Discharge or charger removal detected. ChgWDT Release—Communications or discharge or charger removal detected.
Charge FET Failure	Blow fuse	CHG off yet charge-current persists (programmable).
Discharge FET Failure	Blow fuse	DIS off yet discharge-current persists (programmable).
Charge Voltage/Current "Prescription"		Six-zone JEITA (four charge currents and voltages).

Permanent Failure

The IC supports several types of faults which result in a permanent failure. When any enabled permanent failure is detected, both FETs turn off and remain off regardless of power-cycling. Upon permanent failure detection, the IC records the permanent failure status into nonvolatile nBattStatus. Furthermore, the PFAIL output drives high to either drive an external fuse or latch a secondary protector. This action is useful when a FET failure is detected since charge and discharge can not be blocked in any other way.

The following permanent failure faults are supported whenever permanent failures are enabled (nProtCfg.PFEn = 1) and the condition persists longer than the Permanent Fail debounce timer (nDelayCfg.permFailTimer). When any permanent failure fault is detected, the nBattStatus.PermFail bit is set in addition to the specific fault bit (also in nBattStatus), and both FET drivers are put in the off state.

- **CHG/DIS FET open/short Failures:** Enable/disable this feature by configuring nProtCfg.FetPFEn.
  - **DIS FET Shorted:** If DIS = Off and discharging is detected, nBattStatus.DFETFs is set and written to NVM.
  - **CHG FET Shorted:** If CHG = Off and charging is detected, nBattStatus.CFETFs is set and written to NVM.
  - **FET Open Failure:** For either of the following detection methods, the cause of an open can not be distinctly attributed to specifically either the CHG or DIS FET.
    - **Detected By Discharge Fail:** If DIS = On and PCKP = Low and discharge current isn't detected, nBattStatus.FETFo is set and written to NVM.
    - **Detected By Charge Fail**: If CHG = On and DIS = On and PCKP > BATT + nOVPrtTh.ChgDetTh and charge current isn't detected, nBattStatus.FETFo is set and written to NVM.
- **Severe Over-Voltage Failure**: If VCell exceeds nVPrtTh2.OVP_PermFail, nBattStatus.OVPF is set and written to NVM. Disable by configuring OVP_PermFail to the maximum value of 5.12V (0xFF__).
- **Severe Over-Temperature Failure**: If Temp exceeds nTPrtTh3.TpermFailHot, nBattStatus.OTPF is set and written to NVM. Disable by configuring OTP_PermFail to the maximum value of 127degC (0x7F__).
- **Nonvolatile Protector Checksum Failure**: If enabled (nNVCfg1.enProtChkSum), during startup a checksum of the protector configuration is calculated and compared against the nChkSum register. If the value mismatches, nBattStatus.ChkSumF is set.

Disabling FETs by Pin-Control or I²C Command

The IC provides FET override control by either I²C command or pin command to the ALRT pin. This functionality can be useful for various types of applications:

- **Factory Testing:** Disconnecting the battery is useful for testing with a controlled external power supply.
- **Battery Selection:** In a multiple-battery system, one battery can be disconnected and another connected by operating the FETs.

When allowed by nonvolatile configuration, both FETs can be turned off by pin control or either FET can be individually turned off by I²C command. The control operates as follows:

- **ALRT Pin Override:** Set nProtCfg.OvrdEn = 1 and drive ALRT low to force both FETs into the off state. Releasing the ALRT line recovers the FETs according to the protector's fault state machine.
- **I²C Command Override:** Set nProtCfg.CmOvrdEn = 1 and write CommStat.CHGOff or CommStat.DISOff to independently disable either the charge or discharge FET. Clearing CHGOff and DISOff recovers the FETs according to the protector's fault state machine.

These features can be disabled and locked by nonvolatile memory to prevent malicious code from blocking the FETs. Although disabling FETs does not produce any safety issues, it can be a nuisance if malicious system-side software denies power to the system.

Fuel Gauge

ModelGauge m5 EZ Algorithm

Classical coulomb-counter-based fuel gauges have excellent linearity and short-term performance. However, they suffer from drift due to the accumulation of the offset error in the current-sense measurement. Although the offset error is often very small, it cannot be eliminated, causes the reported capacity error to increase over time, and requires periodic corrections. Corrections are usually performed at full or empty. Some other systems also use the relaxed battery voltage to perform corrections. These systems determine the true state-of-charge (SOC) based on the battery voltage after a long time of no current flow. Both have the same limitation; if the correction condition is not observed over time in the actual application, the error in the system is boundless. The performance of classic coulomb counters is dominated by the accuracy of such corrections. Voltage measurement-based SOC estimation has accuracy limitations due to imperfect cell modeling but does not accumulate offset error over time.

The IC includes an advanced voltage fuel gauge (VFG) which estimates OCV even during current flow and simulates the nonlinear internal dynamics of a Li+ battery to determine the SOC with improved accuracy. The model considers the time effects of a battery caused by the chemical reactions and impedance in the battery to determine SOC. This SOC estimation does not accumulate offset error over time. The IC performs a smart empty compensation algorithm that automatically compensates for the effect of temperature condition and load conditions to provide accurate state-of-charge information. The converge-to-empty function eliminates error toward an empty state. The IC learns battery capacity over time automatically to improve long-term performance. The age information of the battery is available in the output registers.

The ModelGauge m5 EZ algorithm combines a high-accuracy coulomb counter with a VFG. See Figure 13. The complementary combined result eliminates the weaknesses of both the coulomb counter and the VFG while providing the strengths of both. A mixing algorithm weighs and combines the VFG capacity with the coulomb counter and weighs each result so that both are used optimally to determine the battery state. In this way, the VFG capacity result is used to continuously make small adjustments to the battery state, canceling the coulomb-counter drift.

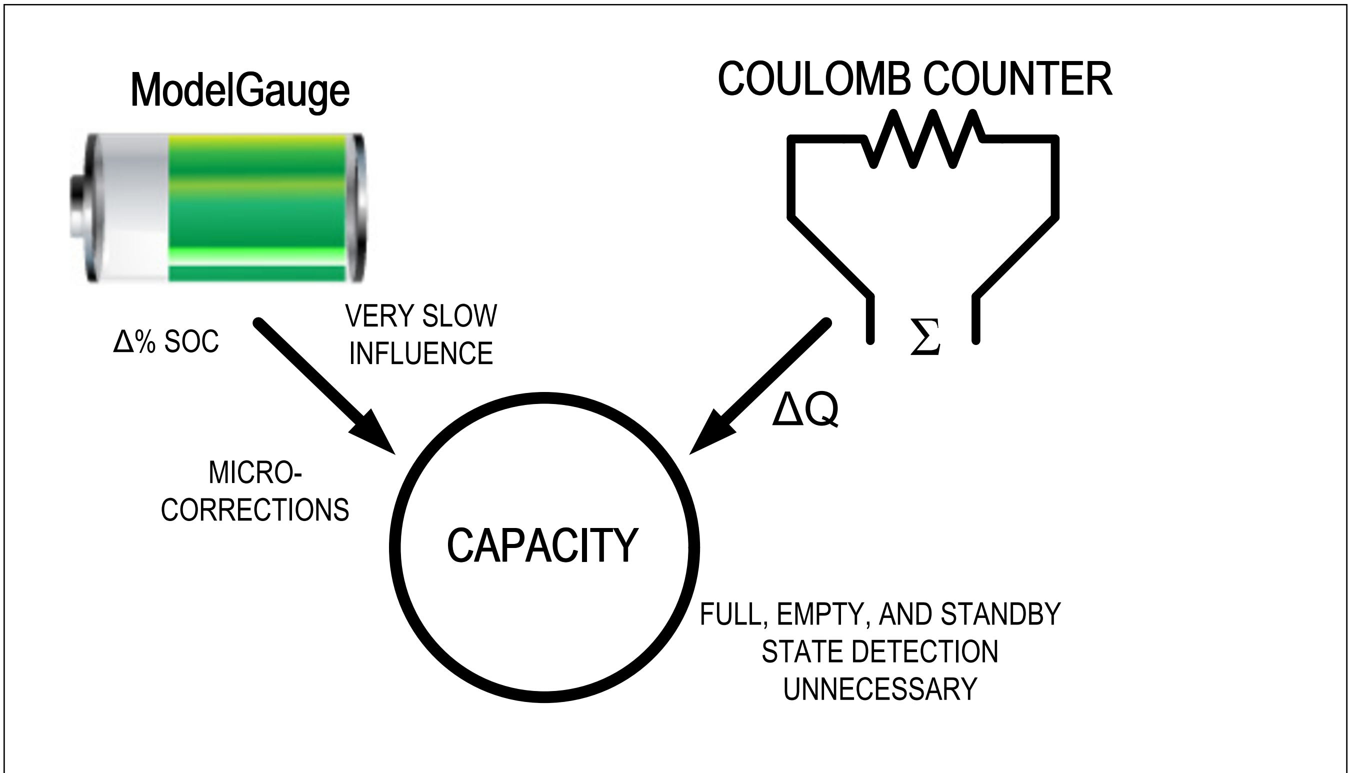


Figure 13. Merger of Coulomb Counter and Voltage Based Fuel Gauge

The ModelGauge m5 EZ algorithm uses this battery state information and accounts for temperature, battery current, age, and application parameters to determine the remaining capacity available to the system. As the battery approaches the critical region near empty, the ModelGauge m5 EZ algorithm invokes a special error correction mechanism that eliminates any error.

The ModelGauge m5 EZ algorithm continually adapts to the cell and application through independent learning routines. As the cell ages, its change in capacity is monitored and updated and the voltage-fuel-gauge dynamics adapt based on cell-voltage behavior in the application.

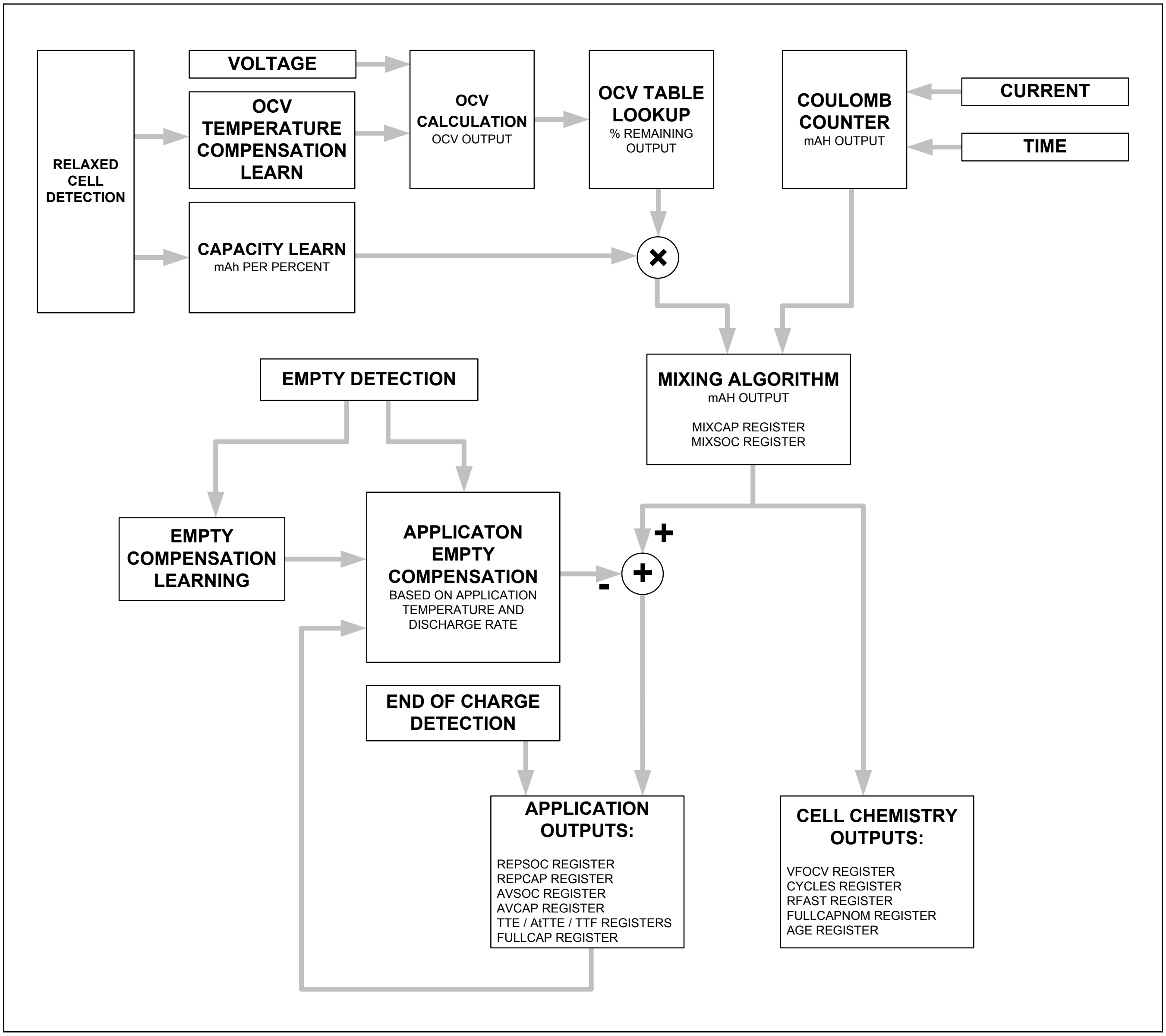


Figure 14. ModelGauge m5 EZ Block Diagram

Wakeup/Shutdown

Modes of Operation

The MAX17330 supports six power modes (three active modes and three shutdown modes) as shown in Table 9 with descriptions of the features available in each mode, the typical current consumption of each mode, and the method to enter and exit each mode.

Table 9. Modes of Operation

MODE	CONSUMPTION (TYPICAL) (µA)	DESCRIPTION
Active	28	Full Functionality. The Protection FETs, charge pump, and ADC are on. Tasks execute every 351ms.
Hibernate (optional)	21	FETs, charge pump, and ADC are on. Tasks execute every 1.4s. If enabled, the the device automatically enters and exits this mode depending on current measurements. Entering hibernate mode requires a low-enough current for a long-enough duration. Exiting requires just one high-enough current event. For specific details regarding the thresholds, see nHibCfg register definition.
Protected and Awake	11	ADC is on. The FETs and charge pump are disabled due to a protection fault, disconnecting the battery from the system. RAM is preserved and the gauge continues to monitor the battery. Firmware remains awake and ready to communicate or enable the battery. Firmware executes every 1.4s.
Ship*	11	Similar state as "Protected and Awake" except the firmware is responsive to wakeup events such as: charger-connection, communications-wakeup, or pushbutton wakeup (depending on which wakeups are enabled by configuration). Firmware executes every 1.4s. See nHibCfg.
	8	Similar state as "Protected and Awake" except the firmware is responsive to wakeup events such as: charger-connection, communications-wakeup, or pushbutton wakeup (depending on which wakeups are enabled by configuration). Firmware executes every 5.625s. See nHibCfg.
DeepShip1*	0.5	FETs, charge pumps, ADC, and firmware are all placed into a shutdown state. The only activity alive relates to analog circuits that monitor for wakeup conditions (charger-detection, communications, or pushbutton, depending on which are enabled).
DeepShip2* / Undervoltage Shutdown	0.1	FETs, charge pumps, ADC, firmware, and most wakeup circuits are powered down. Only the charger-detection wakeup circuit remains powered in this mode to best conserve the small remaining battery capacity and prevent deep discharge.

*When an I^2C SHIP command (setting Config.SHIP = 1) or I^2C SCL/SDA lines collapse (and depending on whether COMMSH is enabled), the MAX17330 either enters Ship (if nProtCfg.DeepShpEn = 0) or DeepShip1 (if nProtCfg.DeepShpEn = 1) or DeepShip2 according to the configuration.

Table 10. MAX17330 Ship Modes

<table>
<tr><th></th><th>ENTER</th><th>WAKEUP</th><th>FUNCTIONALITY</th><th>nProtCfg.
DeepShipEn</th><th>nProtCfg.
DeepShip2En</th></tr>
<tr><td>8µA Ship</td><td rowspan="3">Config.Ship
or
SDA-collapse</td><td rowspan="2">I^2C, Pushbutton, or Charge Source</td><td>5.6s Measurements/ Updates</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>0.5µA DeepShip1</td><td rowspan="3">No updates</td><td>1</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>0.1µA DeepShip2</td><td rowspan="2">Charge Source Only</td><td>1</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>0.1µA UVShdn</td><td>VCell < UVShdn</td><td>—</td><td>—</td></tr>
</table>

The MAX17330 can be woken up with a variety of methods depending on the configuration. If pushbutton wake-up is enabled (nConfig.PBen = 1), then consistently pulling the ALRT/PIO pin low, either by pushbutton or system configuration, wakes up the device. A high-to-low transition on any of the communication lines wakes up the device. A consistent connection to a charge source wakes up the device.

The MAX17330 prevents accidental wake-up when the system is boxed and shipped. When woken up by any source, it debounces all wake-up sources (button, communications, and charger-detection) to ensure that the wake-up is valid. If no valid wake-up is discovered, the device returns to Ship or DeepShip.

The I_Q in the active, hibernate, and ship modes are impacted by the configuration of the IC. Table 11 shows the recommended configuration settings for the nConfig register and the impact those settings have on the I_Q of each mode. Note that when in hibernate mode, the protection for overtemperature and overvoltage are delayed by the nHibCfg.HibScalar value. It is not recommended to have hibernation enabled with the nHibCfg.HibScalar set to more than 1.4 seconds.

Table 11. Recommended nHibCfg Settings and the Impact on I_Q

AVAILABLE LOW POWER CONFIGURATION	nHibCfg	FETS-OFF	FETS-ON MODES	UPDATE RATE		NOTES
		SHIP I_Q (µA)	ACTIVE/ HIBERNATE I_Q (µA)	ACTIVE (s)	SHIP (s)	
1.4s Ship	0x0909	11	28/NA	0.351	1.4	
1.4s Ship + Hibernate	0x8909	11	28/21	0.351	1.4	Overtemperature and overvoltage detection is delayed by 1.4s when in hibernate mode.
5.625s Ship	0x090B	8	28/NA	0.351	5.625	

Power Mode Transition State Diagram

Figure 15 illustrates how the device transitions in and out of all of the possible power modes of operation of the device.

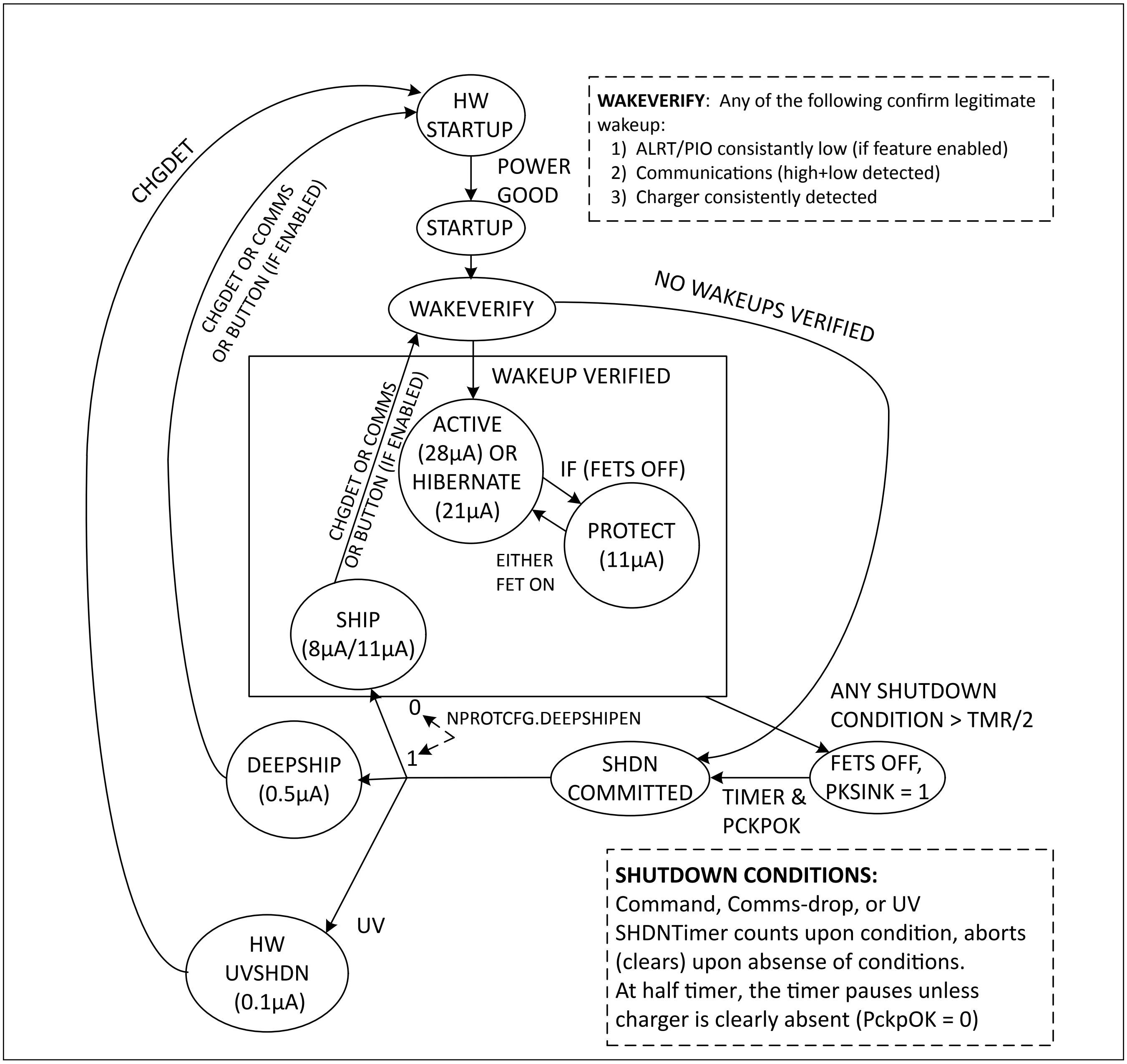


Figure 15. Power Mode Transition State Diagram

Pushbutton Wakeup

The ALRT/PIO pin can be used to wake up the device by enabling the pushbutton wakeup function by setting the nConfig.PBen. The pushbutton can be implemented in the system to wakeup the device and the system as shown in the *Pushbutton Schematic*.

Applications Information

Component Selection

MAX17330 has the following fixed components. These must remain the same in all designs. Voltage ratings listed are minimums. Higher ratings can be used, but should minimize derating on capacitors. The subscript denotes the pin name to which the component is connected. See the *Typical Application Schematic* for reference.

Table 12. MAX17330 Standard Components

COMPONENT	VALUE	MINIMUM RATING	NOTES
R_{BATT}	10Ω	—	Must match RC time with R_{PCKP}. Power rating should be sized with R_{ZVC}. If Zero-Volt charging is not used, use 1mA rating.
C_{BATT}	0.1µF	5V	Must match RC time with C_{PCKP}.
R_{PCKP}	1kΩ	—	Low Current. RC time matching is helpful for supplement mode detection.
C_{PCKP}	1nF	10V	This node can be exposed to higher voltage. Higher voltage capacitor can be used.
C_{CP}	0.1µF	10V	
C_{REG2}	0.47µF	5V	
R_{CHG}	100Ω	—	
C_{CHG}	22nF	—	
R_{DIS}	1kΩ	—	Lower resistance can be used for faster DIS response. 0Ω is acceptable. Higher resistance increases FET Turn Off switching time.

Sense Resistor

Sense resistor selection is critical to MAX17330 operation. The charging and protection current range and resolution are defined by the sense resistor, as are the capacity range and resolution. Table 13 provides guidance for regulation current ranges based on the sense resistor. A current range should be selected for the Constant Current regulation. Termination Current can be below the charge current range. For managed DC-DC applications, the heat generated in the CHG/DIS FETs is significantly less, and smaller sense resistors and larger currents are allowed. For applications with fixed DC voltage input, larger thermal budget, and larger currents than the listed range are allowed, see Table 22 for maximum current range. For fixed DC applications, at low cell voltage, the MAX17330 might regulate in Constant Power mode until the cell voltage is high enough to enter CC mode. See Table 18 for heat limits.

Table 13. Sense Resistor Selection

CHARGE SOURCE	R_{SENSE} (mΩ)	CHARGE CURRENT RANGE (mA)
Managed DC-DC or Switching Charger	2	1750 to 5712
Managed DC-DC or Switching Charger	5	700 to 5120
Managed DC-DC or Switching Charger	10	350 to 2560
5V or USB	10	350 to 1129
5V or USB	20	175 to 565
5V or USB	50	70 to 226
5V or USB	100	35 to 113
5V or USB	200	17.5 to 56
5V or USB	500	7 to 23

Charging and Protection FETs

After sense resistor selection, FET selection is the the next critical component choice for system design. The MAX17330 uses a voltage doubler charge pump as the input to the FET drivers. With this design, V_{GS} for the CHG FET is always equal to V_{Cell}. The FET V_{TH} must be low to allow it to turn on and regulate the FET from a low battery. V_{TH} < 2V is recommended.

V_{DS} for the CHG FET (or V_{SS} for dual FETs) must be set based on the application requirements. For pack side applicaiton with removable batteries, 12V is recommended and 20V is optional. For implementations where the battery is captive, or MAX17330 is installed on the system board, lower V_{DS} (or V_{SS}) is allowed but must meet the maximum charge source voltage.

Power Dissipation is a critical function since the MAX17330 operates the FET in the Ohmic/Linear region. For FETs with lower power dissipation, the HeatLim of MAX17330 reduces charging current to keep the FET in the safe operating range. Good thermal rated FETs and PCB design is needed for maximum charging current.

R_{DSON} and package size can be other considerations for application purposes. They are not critical for MAX17330 operation.

ESD and Optional Components

Thermistors are optional, but recommended components on the MAX17330. See the nPackCFG.THCfg register subfield for details on how thermistors are used by the MAX17330. Table 97 lists common NTC thermistors with their associated Beta value and the nThermCfg value. Other thermistors can be used with the formula listed in Table 97, or by contacting Maxim Integrated.

The *Typical Application Schematic* shows series resistors and Zener diodes on the ALRT, SDA, and SCL pins. For applications where these pins are exposed, adding some ESD protection is necessary. TVS diodes can be used instead of Zener diodes for stronger protection. 150Ω resistors have been tested with 4.7V Zener diodes to withstand ±8kV contact and ±16kV air discharge without damage to the IC. These components can be omitted for applications where the MAX17330 is installed on the system board.

In application using multiple protection ICs where the secondary protector is connected between MAX17330 and the cell, R_{ZVC} must be populated. If the secondary protector blocks Zero-Volt charging, R_{ZVC} doesn't need an exact calculation and only provides current to wake the secondary protector if it is in a protected or shutdown state (use 100Ω for this application). For Zero-Volt charging, R_{ZVC} is calculated with the formula in the *Zero-Volt Charging* section. For applications with only the MAX17330 as the protector and no Zero-Volt charging, do not connect R_{ZVC}.

Register Description Conventions

The following sections define standard conventions used throughout the data sheet to describe register functions and device behavior. Any register that does not match one of the following data formats is described as a special register.

Standard Register Formats

Unless otherwise stated during a given register's description, all IC registers follow the same format depending on the type of register. See Table 14 for the resolution and range of any register described hereafter. Note that current and capacity values are displayed as a voltage and must be divided by the sense resistor to determine amps or amp-hours. It is strongly recommended to use the lower byte of nRSense (19Ch) register to store the sense resistor value for use by the host software.

Table 14. ModelGauge Register Standard Resolutions

REGISTER TYPE	LSB SIZE	MINIMUM VALUE	MAXIMUM VALUE	NOTES
Capacity	5.0μVh/ R_{SENSE}	0μVh	327.675mVh/ R_{SENSE}	Equivalent to 0.5mAh with a 10mΩ sense resistor.
Percentage	1/256%	0%	255.9961%	1% LSb when reading only the upper byte.
Voltage	78.125μV	0V	5.11992V	—

Table 14. ModelGauge Register Standard Resolutions (continued)

REGISTER TYPE	LSB SIZE	MINIMUM VALUE	MAXIMUM VALUE	NOTES
Current	1.5625μV/ R_{SENSE}	-51.2mV/ R_{SENSE}	51.1984mV/ R_{SENSE}	Signed 2's complement format. Equivalent to 156.25μA with a 10mΩ sense resistor.
Temperature	1/256°C	-128°C	127.996°C	Signed 2's complement format. 1°C LSb when reading only the upper byte.
Resistance	1/4096Ω	0Ω	15.99976Ω	—
Time	5.625s	0s	102.3984hr	—
Power	8mW/R_{SENSE}	-262W/R_{SENSE}	262W/R_{SENSE}	Signed 2's complement format. Equivalent to 0.8mW with a 10mΩ sense resistor.
Special	—	—	—	Format details are included with the register description.

Device Reset

Device reset refers to any condition that would cause the IC to recall nonvolatile memory into RAM locations and restart operation of the fuel gauge. Device reset refers to initial power up of the IC, temporary power loss, or reset through the software power-on-reset command.

Nonvolatile Backup and Initial Value

All configuration register locations have nonvolatile memory backup that can be enabled with control bits in the nNVCfg0, nNVCfg1, and nNVCfg2 registers. If enabled, these registers are initialized to their corresponding nonvolatile register value after device reset. If nonvolatile backup is disabled, the register restores to an alternate initial value instead. See each register description for details.

Register Naming Conventions

Register addresses are described throughout the document as 9-bit internal values from 000h to 1FFh. These addresses must be translated to 8-bit external slave address and 8-bit register address. A leading '0' indicates the primary slave address (0x6C by default) should be used to read this register and a leading '1' indicates the secondary slave address (default 0x16) should be used to read this register. See the *Memory* section for details.

Register names that start with a lowercase 'n', such as nPackCfg for example, indicate that the register is a nonvolatile memory location. Register names that start with a lower case 's' indicate the register is part of the SBS compliant register block.

Charging Registers

Charging Status and Configuration Registers

ChgStat Register (0A3h)

Register Type: Special

The ChgStat register shown in Table 15 indicates the charger control mode.

Table 15. ChgStat (0A3h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
Dropout	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		x	x	CP	CT	CC	CV

CC: Constant Current mode. Charging is controlled by ChargingCurrent register.

CV: Constant Voltage mode. Charging is controlled by ChargingVoltage register.

CP: Heat Limit. If the Pack+ voltage is adjustable, decrease the voltage to exit CP mode to increase charging speed.

CT: FET Temperature limit. If the Pack+ voltage is adjustable, decrease the voltage to decrease FET temperature and increase charging speed.

Dropout: Dropout Saturation Prevention. An alert is also generated on Status.CA whenever dropout is detected. If PACK+ voltage is adjustable, the application processor should increase the voltage to increase charging speed.

When charging directly from USB, the MAX17330 attempts to charge at the current indicated in ChargingCurrent. If this exceeds the current limit of the USB charger, the USB output voltage drops and the MAX17330 enters Dropout mode. The USB output voltage increases as a function of the cell voltage and the dropout voltage until the battery reaches CV mode. The USB output voltage returns back to regulation as the battery current tapers closer to the termination current.

nChgCfg0 Register (1C2h)

Type: Special

The nChgCfg0 register is shown in Table 16 and sets the Prequal voltage and current as well as Minimum System Voltage.

Table 16. nChgCfg0 Register (1C2h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
0	nOCMargin		PreQualVolt					VSysMin			PreChgCurr				

PreQualVolt: Sets the Prequal voltage. Prequal Voltage = UVP + PreQualVolt x 20mV, PreQualVolt is a signed 2's compliment value with range of UVP - 320mV to UVP + 300mV.

PreChgCurr: Sets the precharging current for the ChargingCurrent register. Precharge current is calculated as:

PreChargeCurrent = nIChgCfg.RoomChargingCurrent x PreChgCurr / 128 with a range from RoomChargingCurrent / 128 to RoomChargingCurrent / 4.

VSysMin: If the charge source is overloaded and is not able to hold the output voltage, Minimum System Voltage increases PACK+ voltage by keeping the DIS FET Off until cell voltage reaches VSysMin. The system minimum voltage is relative to nVempty and can be configured from nVempty to nVempty - 0.7V in 100mV steps. The recommended setting for VSysMin is 3.4V or lower, as this generates extra heat during charging. Set to 0 to disable this feature.

nChgCfg1 Register (1CBh)

Type: Special

The nChgCfg1 register is shown in Table 17 and sets the heat and temperature parameters for the charger.

Table 17. nChgCfg1 (1CBh) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0

Table 17. nChgCfg1 (1CBh) Format (continued)

0	0	HeatLim	0	FETLim	FetTheta

HeatLim: Set HeatLim to limit the thermal dissipation in the protection FETs during prequal regulation. Set HeatLim from 51mW to 1581mW in 51mW steps with to 10mΩ R_{SENSE} (Heat = I x V). The effective power-dissipation limit is (HeatLim) x 51mW. See Table 18 for other sense resistors.

Table 18. HeatLim Range and Resolution for Different Sense Resistors

SENSE RESISTOR (mΩ)	MIN (mW)	MAX (mW)	STEP (mW)
5	102	3162	102
10	51	1581	51
20	25.5	790.5	25.5
50	10.2	316.2	10.2
100	5.1	158.1	5.1
200	2.55	79.05	2.55

FetTheta: FetTheta is used to calculate actual Junction temp with only observing DieTemp and Thermistor 2 during charging. FET Junction temperature is calculated with the following equation:

FETTemp = TH2_Temp+ (TH2_Temp - DieTemp) x FetTheta.

The FetTheta configuration range is 0 to 4.0 with 0.125 steps. If Zero-Volt charging is used, or Thermistor 2 is not used, DieTemp is used as FET temperature.

FETLim: Set FET Lim to limit FET temperature during charging. The range is 75°C to 103°C with a 4°C lsb.

nMiscCfg2 Register (1E4h)

Type: Special

The nMiscCfg2 register is shown in Table 19 and sets the charger restart threshold voltage.

Table 19. nMiscCfg2 Register (1E4h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	dFullOCV							0	0

dFullOCV: Sets the charger restart open circuit voltage threshold. The charger restarts if the open circuit voltage falls below ChargingVoltage - dFullOCV - 10mV. dFullOCV has a LSB of 0.625mV, with a range of 80mV. The recommended value for this is 50mV for a total of 60mV below ChargingVoltage for the restart threshold. Set dFullOCV to 0 to disable this function. This function is disabled by default.

Charging Configuration Registers

The ChargingVoltage and ChargingCurrent display the calculated target charge voltage and current. This includes the programmed charging voltage and current, charging modifications according to battery temperature, and step-charging.

ChargingVoltage Register (02Ah)

Register Type: Voltage

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The ChargingVoltage register reports the target charging voltage.

ChargingCurrent Register (028h)

Register Type: Current

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The ChargingCurrent register reports the target charging current.

nIChgTerm Register (19Ch)

Register Type: Current

Nonvolatile Restore: IChgTerm (01Eh) if nNVCfg0.enICT is set

Alternate Initial Value: 1/3rd the value of the nFullCapNom register (corresponds to C/9.6)

The nIChgTerm register allows the device to detect when a charge cycle of the cell has completed. nIChgTerm should be programmed to the exact charge termination current used in the application. The device detects end-of-charge if both of the following conditions are met:

- *VFSOC* Register > *FullSOCThr* Register
- Current Register < IChgTerm

See the *End-of-Charge* section for more details.

nVChgCfg Register (1D9h)

The nVChgCfg register, shown in Table 20, sets the JEITA charge voltage configuration for the MAX17330. The JEITA charge voltage is used to calculate the Charging Voltage register and is used to determine the overvoltage-protection threshold.

Each charge voltage register is a signed offset with 5mV or 20mV resolution. The RoomChargeV offset is defined relative to a normal standard charge setting of 4.2V. The additional charge voltages are relative to RoomChargeV based on the temperature. To disable the temperature dependence and create a flat charging voltage across the temperature range, set dWarmChargeV, dColdChargeV, and dHotChargeV to a value of 0x00.

Table 20. nVChgCfg Register (1D9h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
RoomChargeV								dWarmChargeV		dColdChargeV			dHotChargeV		

RoomChargeV: RoomChargeV defines the charge voltage between temperatures T2 and T3 relative to a standard 4.2V setting, providing a range of 3.56V to 4.835V in 5mV steps. RoomChargeV is a signed configuration. Set to 0x00 to configure for standard 4.2V.

dColdChargeV: ColdChargeV defines the delta charge voltage (relative to room) between temperatures T1 and T2 relative to the room setting, providing a range of RoomChargeV (RoomChargeV - 140mV) in -20mV steps. dColdChargeV configuration is unsigned.

dWarmChargeV: WarmChargeV defines the delta charge voltage (relative to room) between temperatures TWarm and T3 relative to the room setting, providing a range of RoomChargeV (RoomChargeV - 60mV) in -20mV steps. dColdChargeV configuration is unsigned.

dHotChargeV: HotChargeV defines the delta charge voltage (relative to room) between temperatures T3 and T4 relative to the room setting, providing a range of WarmChargeV (WarmChargeV - 140mV) in -20mV steps. dHotChargeV configuration is unsigned.

nIChgCfg Register (1D8h)

The nIChgCfg register shown in Table 21 sets the nominal room temperature charging current and the coefficients to scale the charging current across the temperature zones shown in Figure 9. The WarmCOEF, ColdCOEF, and HotCOEF coefficients impact the charging current as well as OCCP and ODCP (See nIPrtTh1).

To disable the temperature dependence and create a flat charging current across the temperature range, set the lower byte of nIChgCfg to a value of 0xFF.

Table 21. nIChgCfg Register (1D8h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
RoomChargingCurrent								WarmCOEF		ColdCOEF			HotCOEF		

RoomChargingCurrent: Sets the nominal room-temperature charging current. The LSB is 100μV. The ChargingCurrent of MAX17330 is configurable from 10mA (0x00) to 2560mA (0xFF) with a 10mΩ sense resistor. See Table 22 for other sense resistors.

Table 22. Charging Current for Different Sense Resistors

SENSE RESISTOR (mΩ)	STEP SIZE (mA)	MAX CURRENT (mA)
2	50	12800
5	20	5120
10	10	2560
50	2	512
100	1	256
200	0.5	128

In addition to the range and resolution tradeoff, optimum sense resistor selection requires considering power dissipation and the analog accuracy of the MAX17330. See the *Component Selection* section for more details.

HotCOEF: Coefficient 12.5% to 100% relative to ChargingCurrent for controlling the charge current at hot. HotCOEF has a 12.5% LSB resolution. The resulting HotChargingCurrent is controlled by the following equation:

HotChargingCurrent = RoomChargingCurrent x (HotCOEF + 1)/8

WarmCOEF: Coefficient 62.5% to 100% relative to ChargingCurrent for controlling the charge current at warm. WarmCOEF has a 12.5% LSB resolution. The resulting WarmChargingCurrent is controlled by the following equation:

WarmChargingCurrent = RoomChargingCurrent x (WarmCOEF + 5)/8

ColdCOEF: Coefficient 12.5% to 100% relative to ChargingCurrent for controlling the charge current at cold. ColdCOEF has a 12.5% LSB resolution. The resulting ColdChargingCurrent is controlled by the following equation:

ColdChargingCurrent = RoomChargingCurrent x (ColdCOEF + 1)/8

HotCOEF, WarmCOEF, and ColdCOEF also rescale nIPrtTh1.OCCP.

nStepChg Register (1DBh)

The nStepChg register defines the step-charging prescription as shown in Figure 2.

To disable step-charging, set nStepChg = 0xFF00.

Table 23. nStepChg Register (1DBh) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
StepCurr1				StepCurr2				StepdV0				StepdV1			

StepCurr1 and **StepCurr2**: Both of these register bit-fields scale the JEITA charge current down by a 4-bit ratio from 1/16 to 16/16.

StepdV0 and **StepdV1**: These register bit-fields configure StepVolt0 and StepVolt1 relative to the JEITA charge voltage. Both registers are negative offsets relative to JEITA ChargeVoltage and support 10mV LSB.

Protection Registers

Voltage Protection Registers

nUVPrtTh Register (1D0h)

Register Type: Special

The nUVPrtTh register shown in Table 24 sets undervoltage protection, deep-discharge-state protection, and undervoltage-shutdown thresholds.

Table 24. nUVPrtTh Register (1D0h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
UVP							UOCVP					UVShdn			

UVP: Undervoltage Protection Threshold. The MAX17330 opens the discharge FET when VCell < UVP. UVP can be configured from 2.2V to 3.46V in 20mV steps. UVP is unsigned.

UOCVP: Under Open Circuit Voltage Protection Threshold (also referred to as SmartEmpty). The MAX17330 opens the discharge FET when VFOCV < UOCVP. UOCVP is relative to UVP and can be configured from UVP to UVP + 1.28V in 40mV steps.

UVShdn: Undervoltage Shutdown Threshold. The MAX17330 shutdowns when VCell < UVShdn. UVShdn is relative to UVP and can be configured from UVP - 0.32V to UVP + 0.28V in 40mV steps. Note that this is a signed value and UVShdn should be configured as a 2's compliment negative value so that UVShdn < UVP.

nOVPrtTh Register (1DAh)

Factory Default Value: B354h

The nOVPrtTh register shown in Table 25 sets the permanent overvoltage protection threshold, the charge-detection threshold, the overvoltage-protection threshold, and the overvoltage-protection-release threshold. dOVP and dOVPR are relative to the Charge Voltage that is set in the nVChgCfg register and have a 10mV resolution.

Table 25. nOVPrtTh Register (1DAh) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
OVPPermFail				0	ChgDetTh			dOVP				dOVPR			

dOVP: Delta from ChargeVoltage to Overvoltage Protection. dOVP sets JEITA overvoltage protection relative to ChargeVoltage (see nVChgCfg). If nNVCfg1.enJP is disabled, then OVP voltage is calculated from RoomChargeV across all temperature zones. This is a positive number with 10mV resolution and 150mV range. Overvoltage protection is calculated as:

$$OVP = ChargeVoltage + dOVP \times 10mV$$

dOVPR: Delta from Overvoltage Protection to the Overvoltage-Release Threshold. dOVPR sets overvoltage-protection release relative to the overvoltage-protection setting. This is a positive number with 10mV resolution and is translated to a negative offset relative to OVP. Overvoltage-protection release is calculated as:

$$OVPR = OVP - dOVPR \times 10mV$$

OVPPermFail: Permanent Failure OVP (permanent overvoltage protection) Threshold. Permanent failure overvoltage protection occurs when any cell voltage register reading exceeds this value. The OVPPermFail range is $OVP\_threshold_{Room}$ + 40mV to $OVP\_threshold_{Room}$ + 340mV with a 20mV LSB.

$$OVP\_PermFail\_Threshold = OVP_{Room} + 40mV + (OVPPermFail \times 20mV)$$

ChgDetTh: Charger Detection Threshold. The IC determines that a charger is connected when PCKP > (BATT + ChgDetTh). ChgDetTh has a range of 10mV to 80mV with a 10mV LSB.

Current Protection Registers

nODSCTh Register (1DDh)

Factory Default Value: 0EAFh

The nODSCTh register sets the current thresholds for each overcurrent alert. The format of the registers is shown in Table 26.

Table 26. nODSCTh Register (1DDh) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
OCTH						SCTH					ODTH				

X: Don't Care.

SCTH: Short-Circuit Threshold Setting. Sets the short-circuit threshold to a value between 0mV and -158.72mV with a step size of -5.12mV. The SCTH bits are stored such that 0x1F = 0mV and 0x00 = -158.72mV. The short-circuit threshold is calculated as -158.72mV + (SCTH x 5.12mV).

ODTH: Overdischarge Threshold Setting. Sets the overdischarge threshold to a value between 0mV and -79.36mV with a step size of -2.56mV. The ODTH bits are stored such that 0x1F = 0mV and 0x00 = -79.36mV. The overdischarge threshold is calculated as -79.36mV + (ODTH x 2.56mV).

OCTH: Overcharge Threshold Setting. Sets the overcharge threshold to a value between 0mV and 39.375mV with a step size of 0.625mV. The OCTH bits are stored such that 0x3F = 0mV and 0x00 = 39.375mV. The overcharge threshold is calculated as 39.375mV - (OCTH x 0.625mV).

Table 27 shows sample values of calculated thresholds in millivolts for OCTH, SCTh, and ODTH. Equivalent current thresholds are shown assuming a 10mΩ sense resistor.

Table 27. OCTH, SCTh, and ODTH Sample Values

	OCTH		SCTH		ODTH	
0x00	39.375mV	3.9375A	-158.72mV	-15.872A	-79.36mV	-7.936A
0x01	38.75mV	3.875A	-153.6mV	-15.36A	-76.8mV	-7.68A
0x02	38.125mV	3.8125A	-148.8mV	-14.848A	-74.24mV	-7.424A
0x04	36.875mV	3.6875A	-138.24mV	-13.824A	-69.12mV	-6.912A
0x08	34.735mV	3.4735A	-117.76mV	-11.776A	-58.88mV	-5.888A
0x10	29.375mV	2.9375A	-76.8mV	-7.68A	-38.4mV	-3.84A
0x14	26.875mV	2.6875A	-56.32mV	-5.632A	-28.16mV	-2.816A
0x18	24.375mV	2.4375A	-35.84mV	-3.584A	-17.92mV	-1.792A
0x1E	20.625mV	2.0625A	-5.12mV	-0.512A	-2.56mV	0.256A
0x1F	20mV	2A	0mV	0.00A	0.0mV	0.00A
0x2F	10mV	1A	—	—	—	—
0x3F	0mV	0A	—	—	—	—

nODSCCfg Register (1DEh)

Factory Default Value: 0x4355

The nODSCCfg register configures the delay behavior for the short-circuit, over-discharge-current, and over-charge-current comparators. The format of the register is shown in Table 28.

Table 28. nODSCCfg Register (1DEh) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0

Table 28. nODSCCfg Register (1DEh) Format (continued)

X	1	X	X	SCDLY	X	1	X	1	OCDLY

X: Don't Care.

SCDLY: Short-Circuit Delay. Configure from 0x0 to 0xF to set short-circuit detection debouncing delay between 70μs and 985μs (70μs + 61μs x SCDLY). There can be up to 31μs of additional delay before the short-circuit's alert affects the discharge FET.

OCDLY: Overdischarge and Overcharge Current Delay. Configure from 0x1 to 0xF to set overdischarge/overcharge detection debouncing delay between 70μs and 14.66ms (70μs + 977μs x OCDLY).

nIPrtTh1 Register (1D3h)—Overcurrent Protection Thresholds

Register Type: Special

The nIPrtTh1 register shown in Table 29 sets the upper and lower limits for overcurrent protection when current exceeds the configuration threshold. The upper 8-bits set the overcharge current protection threshold and the lower 8-bits set the overdischarge current protection threshold. Protection threshold limits are configurable with 400μV resolution over the full operating range of the current register.

Table 29. nIPrtTh1 Register (1D3h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
OCCP								ODCP							

OCCP: Overcharge current-protection threshold in room temperature. Overcharge current-protection occurs when the current register reading exceeds this value. This field is signed 2's complement with 400μV LSb resolution to match the upper byte of the current register. HotCOEF, WarmCOEF, and ColdCOEF rescales nIPrtTh1.OCCP in hot, warm, and cold regions.

For example, in warm regions, the overcharge current protection threshold updates to OCCP x WarmCOEF.

See the nIChgCfg register for HotCOEF, WarmCOEF, and ColdCOEF definitions and the nTPrtTh2 and nTPrtTh3 registers for temperature region definition.

ODCP: Overdischarge current-protection threshold. Overdischarge current-protection occurs when current register reading exceeds this value. This field is signed 2's complement with 400μV LSb resolution to match the upper byte of the current register.

The fault delay for OCCP and ODCP is configured in nDelayCfg.OverCurrTimer.

Temperature Protection Registers

The IC has five thresholds for charging protection as well as overdischarge temperature protection and overtemperature permanent failure protection. The standard register format for each of these thresholds is a signed 2's compliment number with 1°C resolution. The IC has 2°C of hysterisis for releasing temperature faults.

nTPrtTh1 Register (1D1h)

Register Type: Special

The nTPrtTh1 register shown in Table 30 sets T1 "Too-Cold" and T4 "Too-Hot" thresholds which control JEITA and provide charging (Too-Hot or Too-Cold) protection. nProtMiscTh.TooHotDischarge provides discharging (Too-Hot only) protection. Threshold limits are configurable with 1°C resolution over the full operating range Temp register.

Table 30. nTPrtTh1 Register (1D1h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
T4 ("Too-Hot")								T1 ("Too-Cold")							

T1-T4 follow JEITA's naming convention for temperature ranges.

T1: JEITA "Too-Cold" temperature threshold. When Temp < T1, charging is considered unsafe and can damage the battery so the MAX17330 blocks charging.

T4: JEITA "Too-Hot" temperature threshold. When Temp > T4, charging is blocked by the MAX17330.

nTPrtTh2 Register (1D5h)

Register Type: Special

The nTPrtTh2 register shown in Table 31 sets T2 "Cold" and T3 "Hot" thresholds which control JEITA and modulate charging (Hot or Cold) guidance and protection. Threshold limits are configurable with 1°C resolution over the full operating range Temp register.

Table 31. nTPrtTh2 (1D5h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
T3 ("Hot")								T2 ("Cold")							

T1-T4 follow JEITA's naming convention for temperature ranges.

T2: JEITA "Cold" temperature threshold. When Temp < T2, charging current/voltage should be reduced and the charge-protection thresholds are adjusted accordingly.

T3: JEITA "Hot" temperature threshold. When Temp > T3, charging current/voltage should be reduced and the charge-protection thresholds are adjusted accordingly.

nTPrtTh3 Register (1D2h) (beyond JEITA)

Register Type: Special

The nTPrtTh3 register shown in Table 32 sets Twarm and TpermFailHot thresholds which control JEITA and modulate charging (Warm) guidance and protection. Threshold limits are configurable with 1°C resolution over the full operating range Temp register.

Table 32. nTPrtTh3 Register (1D2h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
TpermFailHot								Twarm							

nTPrtTh3 defines protection thresholds beyond standard JEITA definition.

Twarm: Warm temperature threshold (between 'normal' and THot), giving an extra temperature region for changing charging current and charging voltage control.

TpermFailHot: If enabled, the MAX17330 goes into permanent failure mode and permanently disables the charge FET as well as trips the secondary protector (if installed) or blows the fuse (if installed).

Fault Timer Registers

nDelayCfg Register (1DCh)

Factory Default Value: 0x9B3D

Set nDelayCfg to configure debounce timers for various protection faults. A fault state is concluded only if the condition persists throughout the duration of the timer. All delay times start when the ADC first measures the value to exceed the protection threshold which could be up to an additional 351ms of delay between the time the fault is observed externally and the time the ADC first measures the fault.

Charging faults can have an additional delay at the conclusion of the timer before the current completely drops 0mA.There is a capacitor from the gate to source of the CHG FET that is needed for charge regulation, which also slows down the ability to completely stop charge current for any charging faults. The current is immediately reduced at the end of the protection timer setting and is completely reduced to 0mA when the capacitor voltage decays to 0V.

Table 33. nDelayCfg (1DCh) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
CHGWDT		FullTimer			OVPTimer		OverCurrTimer			PermFailTimer		TempTimer		UVPTimer	

UVPTimer: Set UVPTimer to configure the Undervoltage-Protection timer.

Shutdown Timer: Set UVPTimer to configure the Shutdown timer which controls the timing for entering Ship, DeepShip, and DeepShip2/UVShutdown. When the IC begins to enter a low-power mode, it is important to let the Shutdown Timer expire for the IC to fully enter the low-power mode before returning to active mode.

Table 34. UVPTimer Settings

UVPTimer SETTING	0	1	2	3
UVPTimer Configuration	0ms to 351ms	351ms to 0.7s	0.7s to 1.4s	1.4s to 2.8s
Shutdown Timer Configuration	22.5s to 45s	45s to 90s	90s to 180s	3min to 6min

TempTimer: Set TempTimer to configure the fault-timing for the following faults: Too-Cold-Charging (TooColdC), Too-Hot-Charging (TooHotC), Die-Hot (DieHot), and Too-Hot-Discharging (TooHotD).

Table 35. TempTimer Setting

TempTimer SETTING	0	1	2	3
Configuration	0ms to 351ms	351ms to 0.7s	0.7s to 1.4s	1.4s to 2.8s

The TempTimer setting also controls the temperature transition delay. If the MAX17330 detects a change in temperature that results in a lower OVP threshold, the MAX17330 applies a delay equal to the TempTrans configuration before the new lower OVP threshold goes into effect. There is a delay equal to the TempTrans configuration before the new lower OVP threshold goes into effect.

Table 36. TempTrans Configuration Settings

TempTimer SETTING	0	1	2	3
TempTrans Configuration	3.151s to 4.55s	5.951s to 8.75s	11.55s to 17.15s	23.351s to 34.851s

PermFailTimer: Set PermFailTimer to configure the fault timing for permanent failure detection. Generally, larger configurations are preferred to prevent permanent failure unless some severe condition persists.

Table 37. PermFailTimer Settings

PermFailTimer SETTING	0 (NOT RECOMMENDED)	1	2	3
Configuration	0ms to 351ms	351ms to 0.7s	0.7s to 1.4s	1.4s to 2.8s

OverCurrTimer: Set OverCurrTimer to configure the slower overcurrent protection (the additional fast hardware protection thresholds are described in nODSCCfg and nODSCTh). OverCurrTimer configures the fault timing for the slow overcharge-current detection (OCCP) as well as overdischarge-current detection (ODCP).

Table 38. OverCurrTimer Settings

OverCurrTimer SETTING	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Configuration	0ms to 351ms	0.351s to 0.7s	0.7s to 1.4s	1.4s to 2.8s	2.8s to 5.6s	5.6s to 11.25s	11.25s to 22.5s	22.5s to 45s

OVPTimer: Set OVPTimer to configure the fault timing for overvoltage protection.

Table 39. OVPTimer Settings

OVPTimer SETTING	0	1	2	3
Configuration	0ms to 351ms	351ms to 0.7s	0.7s to 1.4s	1.4s to 2.8s

FullTimer: Set FullTimer to configure the timing for full detection. When charge-termination conditions are detected after the timeout, the CHG FET turns off (if feature is enabled).

Prequal Timer: Set FullTimer to configure the timing for prequal charging. Prequal Timer and FullTimer share the same bits in the nDelayCfg register.

Table 40. FullTimer Settings

FullTimer SETTING	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7

Table 40. FullTimer Settings (continued)

FullTimer Configuration	33s to 44s	67s to 90s	2.25min to 3min	4.5min to 6min	9min to 12min	18min to 24min	36min to 48min	72min to 96min
Prequal Timer Configuration	16.875s to 22.5s	33s to 44s	67s to 90s	2.25min to 3min	4.5min to 6min	9min to 12min	18min to 24min	36min to 48min

CHGWDT: Set CHGWDT to configure the charger communication watchdog timer. If enabled, the MAX17330 charge-protects whenever the host has stopped communicating and the SDA/SCL lines idle high for longer than this timeout.

ChgRm: Charger removal debounce (1/4 ChgWDT debounce setting)

Table 41. ChgWDT/ChgRm Settings

ChgWDT/ChgRm SETTINGS	0	1	2	3
CHGWDT Timer	11.2s to 22.5s	22.5s to 45s	45s to 90s	90s to 3min
ChgRm Timer	2.8s to 5.6s	5.6s to 11.2s	11.2s to 22.4s	22.4s to 44.8s

Battery Internal Self-Discharge Detection Registers

Factory Default nProtCfg2 Value: 1006h

To enable the ISD feature using the coulombic-efficiency (CE) method, configure LeakFaultCfg, LeakCurrTh, and CEEn as shown in Table 42. Choose the alert and fault mode with LeakFaultCfg and configure the thresholds with LeakCurrTh, as shown in Table 43. When the ISD alerts are enabled, any leakage current detected beyond the threshold is indicated by the ProtAlrt.LDET bit and *Status*.PA bit (if *nConfig*.ProtAlrtEn = 1). If the ALRT pin is enabled for alerts (*nConfig*.Aen = 1 and *nConfig*.ProtAlrtEn = 1), then the pin indicates the ISD alert. To service the alert, first clear the *ProtAlrt* register and then clear *Status*.PA. The event is also indicated in *nBattStatus*.LDET, which is recorded in the permanent lifelog.

The reported leakage-current measurement can be read from two different registers:

- LeakCurrRep = 15-bit unsigned left-justified value with an LSB of 1.5625μV/16 (or 0.15625mA/16 with 10mΩ sense resistor).
- *nBattStatus*.LeakCurr = 8-bit unsigned value with an LSB of 3.125μV (or 0.3125mA with 10mΩ sense resistor).

Contact Analog Devices for configuring the ISD feature.

Table 42. nProtCfg2 Register (1DFh) Format

<table>
<tr><th>D15</th><th>D14</th><th>D13</th><th>D12</th><th>D11</th><th>D10</th><th>D9</th><th>D8</th><th>D7</th><th>D6</th><th>D5</th><th>D4</th><th>D3</th><th>D2</th><th>D1</th><th>D0</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">LeakFaultCfg</td><td>CEEn</td><td colspan="4">LeakCurrTh</td><td colspan="8">CheckSum</td></tr>
</table>

Table 43. Alert and Fault Mode Settings

<table>
<tr><th>LeakFaultCfg SETTING</th><th>DESCRIPTION</th><th>LeakCurrTh RESOLUTION</th><th>ALERT RANGE</th><th>FAULT RANGE</th></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td colspan="3">Note: Leakage current above LeakCurrTh triggers an alert/fault. Currents refer to the 10mΩ R_{SENSE}.</td></tr>
<tr><td>000</td><td>Disabled</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>001</td><td>Alert Only</td><td rowspan="3">0.3125mA</td><td rowspan="3">0.3125mA to 5mA</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>010</td><td>Fault = Alert + 2.5mA</td><td>2.8125mA to 7.5mA</td></tr>
<tr><td>011</td><td>Fault = Alert + 5mA</td><td>5.3125mA to 10mA</td></tr>
<tr><td>100</td><td>Fault Only (+2.5mA offset)</td><td rowspan="4">0.625mA</td><td></td><td>3.125mA to 12.5mA</td></tr>
<tr><td>101</td><td>Alert Only</td><td rowspan="3">0.625mA to 10mA</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>110</td><td>Fault = Alert + 2.5mA</td><td>3.125mA to 12.5mA</td></tr>
<tr><td>111</td><td>Fault = Alert + 10mA</td><td>10.625mA to 20mA</td></tr>
</table>

X: Don't Care

CEEn: Coulombic-efficiency (CE) method enable. Set to 1 to enable self-discharge detection.

LeakFaultCfg: Leakage Fault Configuration. Set LeakFaultCfg to configure the alert and fault behavior as shown in Table 43.

LeakCurrTh: Leakage Current Threshold is an unsigned 4-bit threshold for leakage current alert and fault generation. The LSB resolution is either 0.625mA or 1.25mA based on the LeakCurrCfg setting as shown in Table 43. When alerts and faults are both enabled, the fault threshold is either 5mA, 10mA, or 20mA above the alert threshold as shown in the Description column of Table 43.

CheckSum: Protector NVM CheckSum. CheckSum is the checksum value of the protection registers for validating NVM at startup when nNVCfg1.enProtChksm = 1.

LeakCurrRep Register (0x16F)

The LeakCurrRep register contains the reported leak current when it is enabled with nCheckSum.CEEn as shown in Table 44.

Table 44. LeakCurrRep Register (0x16F) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
0	Reported LeakCurrent														

Reported LeakCurrent: Reported Leak Current is an unsigned 15-bit leakage current. This register stores the reported leakage current with an LSB of 1.5625μV/16 (or 0.15625mA/16 with a 10mΩ sense resistor). The range is 0mA to 319.99mA.

Status/Configuration Protection Registers

nProtCfg Register (1D7h)

The Protection Configuration register contains enable bits for various protection functions.

Table 45. nProtCfg Register (1D7h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
ChgWDTEn	$\overline{\text{nChgAutoCtrl}}$	FullEn	SCTest		CmOvrdEn	ChgTestEn	PrequalEn
D7	**D6**	**D5**	**D4**	**D3**	**D2**	**D1**	**D0**
Reserved	PFEn	DeepShpEn	OvrdEn	$\overline{\text{UVRdy}}$	FetPFEn	BlockDisCEn	DeepShp2En

BlockDisCEn: Block Discharge FET at too Cold (nTPrtTh1).

PFEn: PermFail Enable. Set PFEn = 1 to enable the detection of a permanent failure to permanently turn the FETs off. All types of permanent failures operate only if PFEn = 1 and are all disabled if PFEn = 0. PFEn must be enabled for the PFAIL pin to be operational. See the *Permanent Failure* section for more details.

FetPFEn: FET PermFail Enable. Set to 1 to enable Charge FET and Discharge FET open or short detection, which registers a permanent failure, permanently turns the FETs off, and drives the PFAIL pin high. PFEn must also be set for the FET PermFail Enable to operate.

$\overline{\text{UVRdy}}$: Undervoltage Ready. Only use with Legacy Mode, set to 1 to use MAX17330 charging. In the undervoltage protected state (but higher than undervoltage shutdown), this bit chooses whether or not the CHG FET remains enabled. Configure $\overline{\text{UVRdy}}$ = 0 to keep the CHG FET and corresponding charge pumps powered during undervoltage protection. In this state, the pack is quickly responsive to charger connection. Configure $\overline{\text{UVRdy}}$ = 1 to disable the CHG FET and corresponding charge pumps during undervoltage protection. In this state, the consumption drops to 11μA but there is a hibernate latency (set by nHibCfg.HibScalar) between when the charge source is applied and when the battery begins charging.

OvrdEn: Override Enable. Set OvrdEn = 1 to enable the Alert pin to be an input to disable the protection FETs.

CmOvrdEn: Comm Override Enable. This bit when set to 1 allows the ChgOff and DisOff bits in CommStat to be set by I^2C communication to turn off the protection FETs.

See *Disabling FETs by Pin-Control or I^2C Command* section for more details about OvrdEn and CmOvrdEn.

DeepShpEn: Set DeepShpEn = 1 to associate shutdown actions (I^2C shutdown command or communication removal) with 0.5µA shutdown. All registers power down in this mode. Set DeepShpEn = 0 to continue full calculations but with protector disabled (CHGEn = 0, DISEn = 0, pump off), operating at the 11µA consumption rate.

DeepShp2En: Set DeepShp2En = 1 to associate shutdown actions (I^2C shutdown command or communication removal) with 0.1µA shutdown. All registers power down in this mode. Set DeepShp2En = 0 to use DeepShip 1 (0.5µA or 11µA modes). Wake up DeepShip2 by connecting a charge source.

SCTest: Set SCTest = 01 to source 30µA from BATT to PCKP to test for the presence/removal of any overload/short-circuit at PCKP. SCTest is only used during special circumstances when DIS = off. Particularly if an overdischarge current fault has been tripped. Because of this, the PCKP resistor must be 10kΩ or less for proper short-circuit removal detection. Set SCTest = 00b to disable.

BlockChgEn: Enable block Chg FET from I^2C for parallel charging application. Protstatus.D7 is set to 1 or 0 according to Config.D0.

nChgAutoCtrl: CHG FET is controlled ON/OFF only. Normal applications should set nProtCfg.$\overline{\text{nChgAutoCtrl}}$ and config.ChgAutoCtrl to 0. Set nProtCfg.nChgAutoCtrl and config.Legacy to 1 to use this function. Charge control is not used. Ideal Diode mode is not used.

nPreQualEn: Charge the battery at prequal until Cell voltage is greater than Undervoltage Protection level.

FullEn: Full Charge Protection Enable. If the full charge protection feature is enabled, the charge FET opens when the battery is fully charged (RepSOC reaches 100%).

ChgWDTEn: Charger WatchDog Enable. If the charger watchdog feature is enabled, the protector disallows charging unless communication has not been detected for more than the Charger WatchDog delay that is configured in nDelayCfg.ChgWdg.

nBattStatus Register (1A8h)

Battery Status Nonvolatile Register

The Battery Status register contains the permanent battery status information. If nProtCfg.PFen = 1, then a permanent fail results in permanently turning the FETs off to ensure the safety of the battery.

Table 46. nBattStatus Register (1A8h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
PermFail	OVPF	OTPF	CFETFs	DFETFs	FETFo	BattHlth	ChksumF
D7	**D6**	**D5**	**D4**	**D3**	**D2**	**D1**	**D0**
Reserved							

PermFail: Permanent Failure. This bit is set if any permanent failure is detected.

CFETFs: ChargeFET Failure-Short Detected. If the MAX17330 detects that the charge FET is shorted and cannot be opened, it sets the CFETFs bit and the PermFail bit. This function is enabled with nProtCfg.FetPFEn.

DFETFs: DischargeFET Failure-Short Detected. If the MAX17330 detects that the discharge FET is shorted and cannot be opened, it sets the DFETFs and the PermFail bit. This function is enabled with nProtCfg.FetPFEn.

FETFo: FET Failure Open. If the MAX17330 detects an open FET failure on either FET, it sets FETFo. This function is enabled with nProtCfg.FetPFEn.

ChksumF: Checksum Failure. ChksumF protection related NVM configuration registers checksum failure. In the case of a checksum failure, the device sets the PermFail bit but does not write it to NVM to prevent using an additional NVM write. This allows the PermFail bit to be cleared by the host so that the INI file can be reloaded.

ProtStatus Register (0D9h)

The Protection Status register contains the Fault States of the Protection State Machine.

Table 47. ProtStatus Register (0D9h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
ChgWDT	TooHotC	Full	TooColdC	OVP	OCCP	Qovflw	PreqF/LDet

Table 47. ProtStatus Register (0D9h) Format (continued)

D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
BlockChg	PermFail	DieHot	TooHotD	UVP	ODCP	BlockDis/TooColdD	Shdn

BlockChg: Blocks charging from either communication timeout or absence of recurring Status.BlockChg = 0 command.

BlockDis: Blocks discharging by direct I^2C command (Config2.BlockDis); BlockDis auto-releases when BlockChg begins.

TooColdD: Same threshold with TooColdC. Enable this function by setting BlockDisCEn in nProtCfg register.

Shdn: A flag to indicate the Shutdown Event status to Protector module for further action on Charging/Discharging FETs, Charge Pump, and PkSink.

PermFail: Permanent Failure Detected. See *nBattStatus* for details of the Permanent Failure.

Discharging Faults:

- **ODCP**—Overdischarge current protection
- **UVP**—Undervoltage Protection
- **TooHotD**—Overtemperature for Discharging
- **DieHot**—Overtemperature for die temperature

Charging Faults:

- **TooHotC**—Overtemperature for Charging
- **OVP**—Overvoltage
- **OCCP**—Overcharge Current Protection
- **Qovrflw**—Q Overflow
- **TooColdC**—Undertemperature
- **Full**—Full Detection
- **ChgWDT**—Charge Watchdog Timer
- **DieHot**—Overtemperature for Die Temperature
- **PreqF**—Prequal timeout was detected
- **LDet**—Leakage fault was detected

ProtAlrt Register (0AFh)

The Protection Alerts register contains a history of any protection events that have been logged by the device and is formatted as shown in Table 48. If any bit of ProtAlrt is 1, then the Status.PA bit is also 1 if Config.PAEn = 1. Once a bit is set, it remains set until cleared by the host. The Alert pin is driven low if Config.ProtAlrtEn = 1.

Table 48. ProtAlrt Register (0AFh) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
ChgWDT/LDet	TooHotC	Full	TooColdC	OVP	OCCP	Qovflw	Reserved
D7	**D6**	**D5**	**D4**	**D3**	**D2**	**D1**	**D0**
Reserved	TempRegionChange	DieHot	TooHotD	UVP	ODCP	Reserved	Reserved

TempRegionChange: Temperature Region Change. A change in the JEITA temperature region creates this alert so that the host is alerted to a reduction in JEITA charging voltage that can impact the charging or protection parameters.

HProtCfg2 Register (0F1h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The status of the discharge FET and charge FET can be monitored in the HProtCfg2 register as shown in Table 49.

Table 49. HProtCfg2 (0F1h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	DISs	CHGs

DISs: Discharge FET Status. DISs = 1 indicates the discharge FET is on and allows discharge current. DISs = 0 indicates the discharge FET is off and blocks discharge current.

CHGs: Charge FET Status. CHGs = 1 indicates the charge FET is on and allows charge current. CHGs = 0 indicates the charge FET is off and blocks charge current.

X: Reserved.

FProtStat Register (0DAh)

Table 50. FProtStat Register (0DAh) format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
X										IsDis	X		Hot	Cold	Warm

X: Don't Care

IsDis: Battery is in Discharging state. Cleared when charging signal is detected.

Hot: Operating in Hot JEITA region.

Cold: Operating in Cold JEITA region.

Warm: Operating in Warm JEITA region.

Other Protection Registers

nProtMiscTh Register (1D6h)

Register Type: Special

The nProtMiscTh register is shown in Table 51 and sets a few miscellaneous protection thresholds.

Table 51. nProtMiscTh Register (1D6h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
QovflwTh				TooHotDischarge				CurrDet				DieTempTh			

DieTempTh: Sets the dietemp overtemperature protection threshold relative to 50°C and has an LSB of 5°C. DieTempTh defines the delta between 50°C and the dietemp protection threshold. The range is 50°C and 125°C.

CurrDet: CurrDet is configurable from 25μV/R_{SENSE} to 400μV/R_{SENSE} in 25μV/R_{SENSE} steps (equivalent to 2.5mA to 40mA in 2.5mA steps with a 10mΩ sense resistor). It is a threshold to detect discharging and charging events from the device perspective. (current > CurrDet) indicates charging, (current < -CurrDet) indicates discharging.

TooHotDischarge: Sets the over-temperature protection threshold associated with discharge. TooHotDischarge has 2°C LSB's and defines the delta between Over-Temp-Charge (nTPrtTh1.T4) and Over-Temp-Discharge. The range is nTPrtTh1.T4(TooHot) to nTPrtTh1.T4(TooHot) + 30°C.

QovflwTh: QovflwTh sets the coefficient for the Qoverflow alert threshold. Qoverflow alert threshold = designCap x coefficient. The MAX17330 monitors the delta Q between the Q at the start of charge and the current Q. If the delta Q exceeds the Qoverflow alert threshold, indicating that the charger has charged more than the expected capacity of the battery, then a ProtStatus.Qovrflw fault is generated and the charge is briefly interrupted. The ProtAlrt.QOverflow bit remains set until the host clears the bit. The coefficient is calculated as: coefficient = 1.0625 + (QovflwTh x 0.0625).

ModelGauge m5 Algorithm

ModelGauge m5 EZ Registers

For accurate results, the ModelGauge m5 EZ uses information about the cell and the application as well as the real-time information measured by the IC. Figure 16 shows inputs and outputs to the algorithm grouped by category. Analog input registers are the real-time measurements of voltage, temperature, and current performed by the IC. Application-specific registers are programmed by the customer to reflect the operation of the application. The Cell Characterization Information registers hold characterization data that models the behavior of the cell over the operating range of the application. The Algorithm Configuration registers allow the host to adjust the performance of the IC for its application. The Learned Information registers allow an application to maintain the accuracy of the fuel gauge as the cell ages. The register description sections describe each register function in detail.

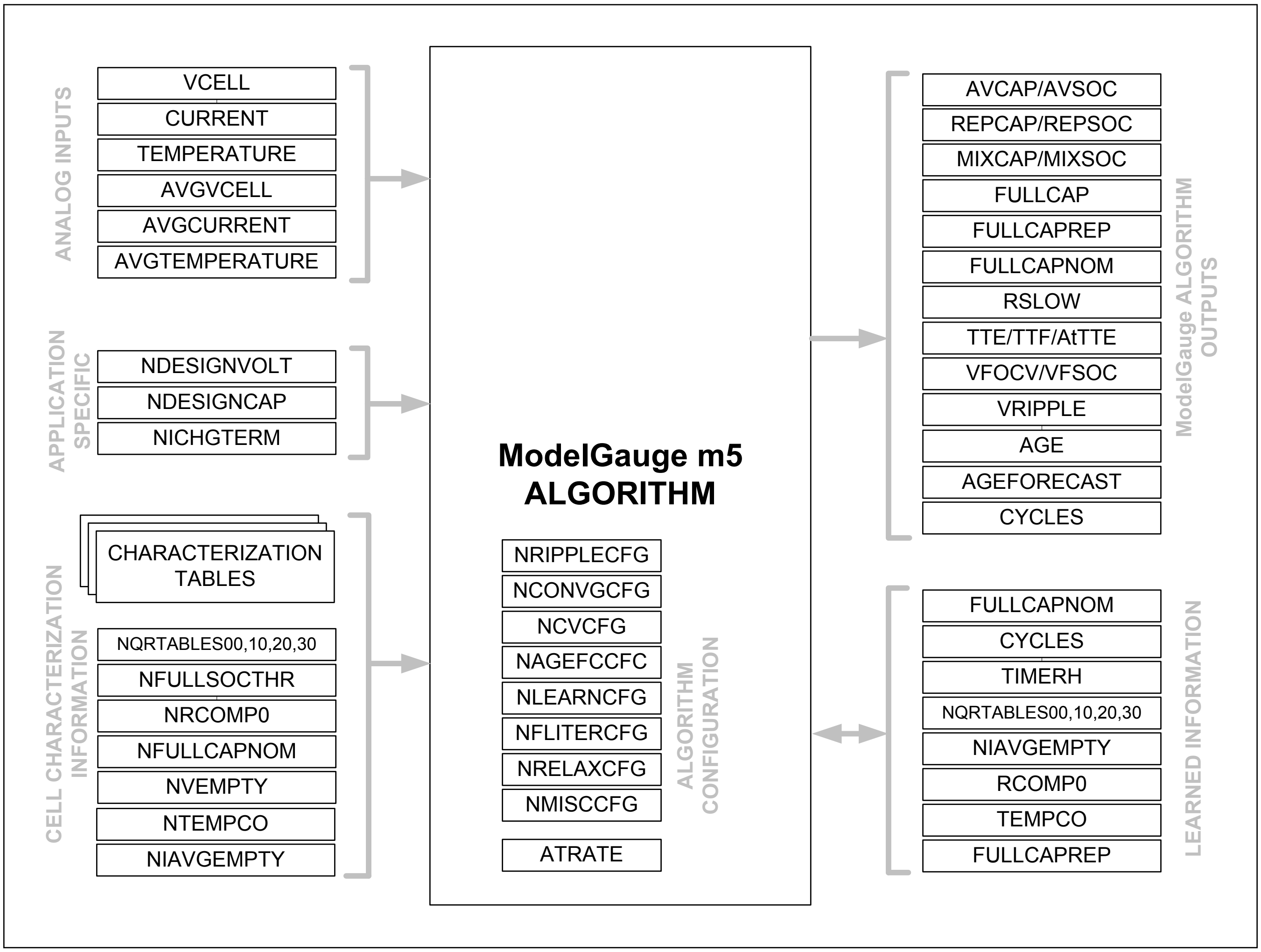


Figure 16. ModelGauge m5 EZ Registers

ModelGauge m5 EZ Algorithm Output Registers

The following registers are outputs from the ModelGauge m5 EZ algorithm. The values in these registers become valid 480ms after the IC is reset.

RepCap Register (005h)

Register Type: Capacity

Nonvolatile Backup: None

RepCap or Reported Capacity is a filtered version of the AvCap register that prevents large jumps in the reported value caused by changes in the application such as abrupt changes in temperature or load current. See the *Fuel-Gauge Empty Compensation* section for details.

RepSOC Register (006h)

Register Type: Percentage

Nonvolatile Backup: None

RepSOC is a filtered version of the AvSOC register that prevents large jumps in the reported value caused by changes in the application such as abrupt changes in load current. RepSOC corresponds to RepCap and *FullCapRep*. RepSOC is intended to be the final state of charge percentage output for use by the application. See the *Fuel-Gauge Empty Compensation* section for details.

FullCapRep Register (010h)

Register Type: Capacity

Nonvolatile Backup and Restore: nFullCapRep (1A9h) or *nFullCapNom* (1A5h)

This register reports the full capacity that goes with *RepCap*, generally used for reporting to the user. A new full-capacity value is calculated at the end of every charge cycle in the application.

TTE Register (011h)

Register Type: Time

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The TTE register holds the estimated time-to-empty for the application under present temperature and load conditions. The TTE value is determined by dividing the AvCap register by the AvgCurrent register. The corresponding AvgCurrent filtering gives a delay in TTE empty, but provides more stable results.

TTF Register (020h)

Register Type: Time

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The TTF register holds the estimated time-to-full for the application under present conditions. The TTF value is determined by learning the constant current and constant voltage portions of the charge cycle based on experience of prior charge cycles. Time-to-full is then estimated by comparing the present charge current to the charge termination current. Operation of the TTF register assumes all charge profiles are consistent in the application. See the *Typical Operating Characteristics* for sample performance.

Age Register (007h)

Register Type: Percentage

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The Age register contains a calculated percentage value of the application's present cell capacity compared to its expected capacity. The result can be used by the host to gauge the battery pack health as compared to a new pack of the same type. The equation for the register output is:

Age Register = 100% x (*FullCapNom* register/DesignCap register)

Cycles Register (017h) and nCycles (1A4h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Backup and Restore: nCycles (1A4h)

The Cycles register maintains a total count of the number of charge/discharge cycles of the cell that have occurred. The result is stored as a percentage of a full cycle. For example, a full charge/discharge cycle results in the Cycles register incrementing by 100%. The Cycles register has a full range of 0 to 16383 cycles with a 25% LSb. Cycles is periodically saved to nCycles to provide a long-term nonvolatile cycle count.

Table 52. nCycles Register (1A4h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
CycleCount (Cycles register << (3-nNVCfg2.FibScl))													nFib		

The LSB of nCycles.CycleCount depends nNVCfg2.fibScl as shown in Table 53. The LSB of the Cycles register is 25%.

Table 53. nNVCfg2.FibScl Setting Determines LSb of nNVCfg2.CyclesCount

NNVCFG2.FIBSCL	NCYCLES.CYCLECOUNT LSB
00b	25%
01b	50%
10b	100%
11b	200%

Configure nFib = 0 for any new pack. nFib is a reset counter which controls Fibonacci-saving reset accelleration (see the *100 Record Life Logging* section). Each reset followed by any nonvolatile save increases by 1. Maximum value is 7 without overflow.

TimerH Register (0BEh)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Backup and Restore: nTimerH (1AFh) if nNVCfg2.enT is set

Alternate Initial Value: 0x0000

This register allows the IC to track the age of the cell. An LSb of 3.2 hours gives a full-scale range for the register of up to 23.94 years. If enabled, this register is periodically backed up to nonvolatile memory as part of the learning function.

FullCap Register (035h)

Register Type: Capacity

Nonvolatile Restore: Derived from nFullCapNom (1A5h)

This register holds the calculated full capacity of the cell based on all inputs from the ModelGauge m5 EZ algorithm including empty compensation. A new full-capacity value is calculated continuously as application conditions change.

nFullCapNom Register (1A5h)

Register Type: Capacity

Nonvolatile Backup and Restore: FullCapNom (023h)

This register holds the calculated full capacity of the cell, not including temperature and empty compensation. A new full-capacity nominal value is calculated each time a cell relaxation event is detected. This register is used to calculate other outputs of the ModelGauge m5 EZ algorithm.

RCell Register (014h)

Register Type: Resistance

Nonvolatile Backup: None

Initial Value: 0x0290

The RCell register displays the calculated internal resistance of the cell. RCell is determined by comparing open-circuit voltage (VFOCV) against measured voltage (VCell) over a long time period while under load current.

VRipple Register (0B2h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Backup: None

Initial Value: 0x0000

The VRipple register holds the slow average RMS value of VCell register reading variation compared to the AvgVCell register. The default filter time is 22.5 seconds. See *nRippleCfg* register description. VRipple has an LSb weight of (1.25/128)mV.

nVoltTemp Register (1AAh)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Backup: AvgVCell and AvgTA registers if nNVCfg2.enVT = 1

This register has dual functionality depending on configuration settings. If nNVCfg2.enVT = 1, this register provides nonvolatile back up of the AvgVCell and AvgTA registers as shown in Table 54.

Table 54. nVoltTemp Register (1AAh) Format when nNVCfg2.enVT = 1

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
AvgVCell Upper 9 Bits									AvgTA Upper 7 Bits						

Alternatively, if nNVCfg0.enAF = 1, this register stores an accumulated age slope value to be used with the Age Forecasting algorithm. Regardless of which option is enabled, this register is periodically saved to nonvolatile memory as part of the learning function. If neither option is enabled, this register can be used as general purpose user memory.

ModelGauge m5 EZ Performance

ModelGauge m5 EZ performance provides plug-and-play operation of the IC. While the IC can be custom tuned to the applications battery through a characterization process for ideal performance, the IC has the ability to provide reasonable performance for most applications with no custom characterization required.

While EZ performance provides reasonable performance for most cell types, some chemistries such as lithium-iron-phosphate (LiFePO4) and Panasonic NCR/NCA series cells require custom characterization for best performance. EZ performance provides models for applications with empty voltages ranging from 3V to 3.4V through the EV kit GUI Configuration Wizard. Contact Analog Devices for details of the custom characterization procedure.

OCV Estimation and Coulomb Count Mixing

The core of the ModelGauge m5 EZ algorithm is a mixing algorithm that combines the OCV state estimation with the coulomb counter. After power-on reset of the IC, coulomb-count accuracy is unknown. The OCV state estimation is weighted heavily compared to the coulomb count output. As the cell progresses through cycles in the application, the coulomb-counter accuracy improves and the mixing algorithm alters the weighting so that the coulomb-counter result is dominant. From this point forward, the IC switches to servo mixing, which provides a fixed magnitude continuous error correction to the coulomb count (up or down) based on the direction of the error from the OCV estimation. This allows differences between the coulomb count and OCV estimation to be corrected quickly (see Figure 17).

The resulting output from the mixing algorithm does not suffer accumulation drift from current measurement offset error and is more stable than a stand-alone OCV estimation algorithm. See Figure 18. Initial accuracy depends on the relaxation state of the cell. The highest initial accuracy is achieved with a fully relaxed cell.

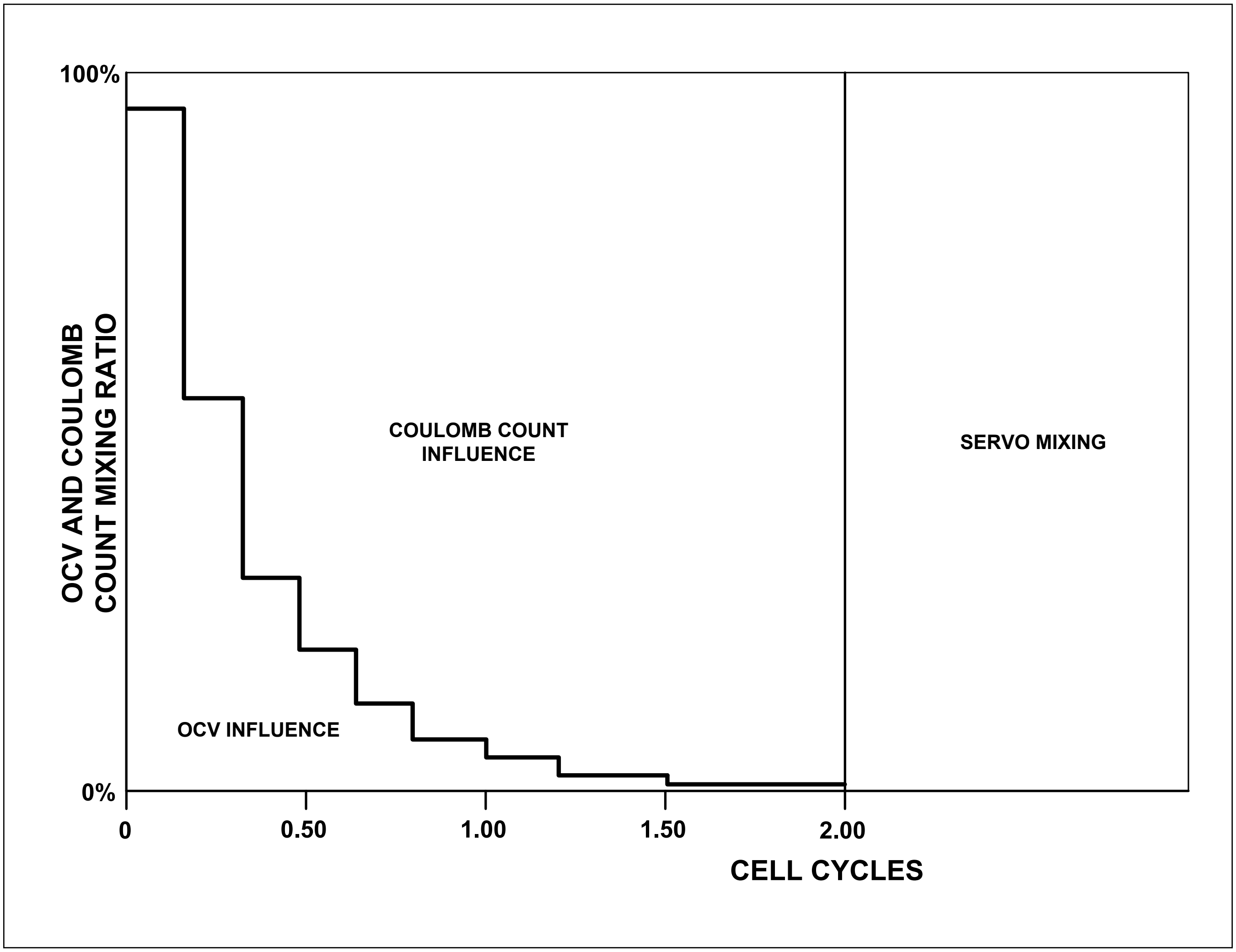


Figure 17. Voltage and Coulomb Count Mixing

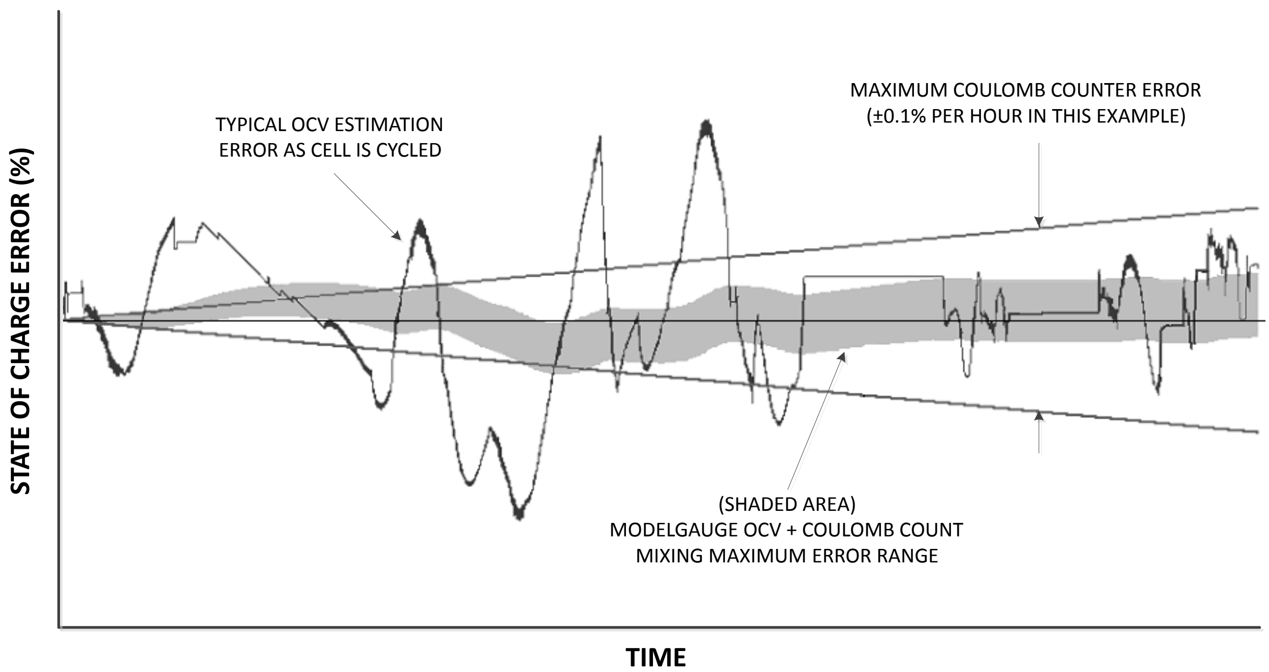


Figure 18. ModelGauge m5 EZ Typical Accuracy Example

Empty Compensation

As the temperature and discharge rate of an application changes, the amount of charge available to the application also changes. The ModelGauge m5 EZ algorithm distinguishes between the remaining capacity of the cell and the remaining capacity of the application, and reports both results to the user.

The *MixCap* output register tracks the charge state of the cell. This is the theoretical miliamp-hours of charge that can be removed from the cell under ideal conditions—extremely low discharge current and independent of cell voltage. This result is not affected by application conditions such as cell impedance or minimum operating voltage of the application. ModelGauge m5 EZ continually tracks the expected empty point of the application in milliamp-hours. This is the amount of charge that cannot be removed from the cell by the application because of minimum voltage requirements and internal losses of the cell. The IC subtracts the amount of charge not available to the application from the *MixCap* register and reports the result in the *AvCap* register.

Since the available remaining capacity is highly dependent on discharge rate, the *AvCap* register can be subject to large instantaneous changes as the application load current changes. The result can increase if the load current suddenly drops, even while discharging. This result, although correct, can be very counterintuitive to the host software or end user. The *RepCap* output register contains a filtered version of *AvCap* that removes any abrupt changes in remaining capacity. *RepCap* converges with *AvCap* over time to correctly predict the application empty point while discharging or the application full point while charging. Figure 19 shows the relationship of these registers.

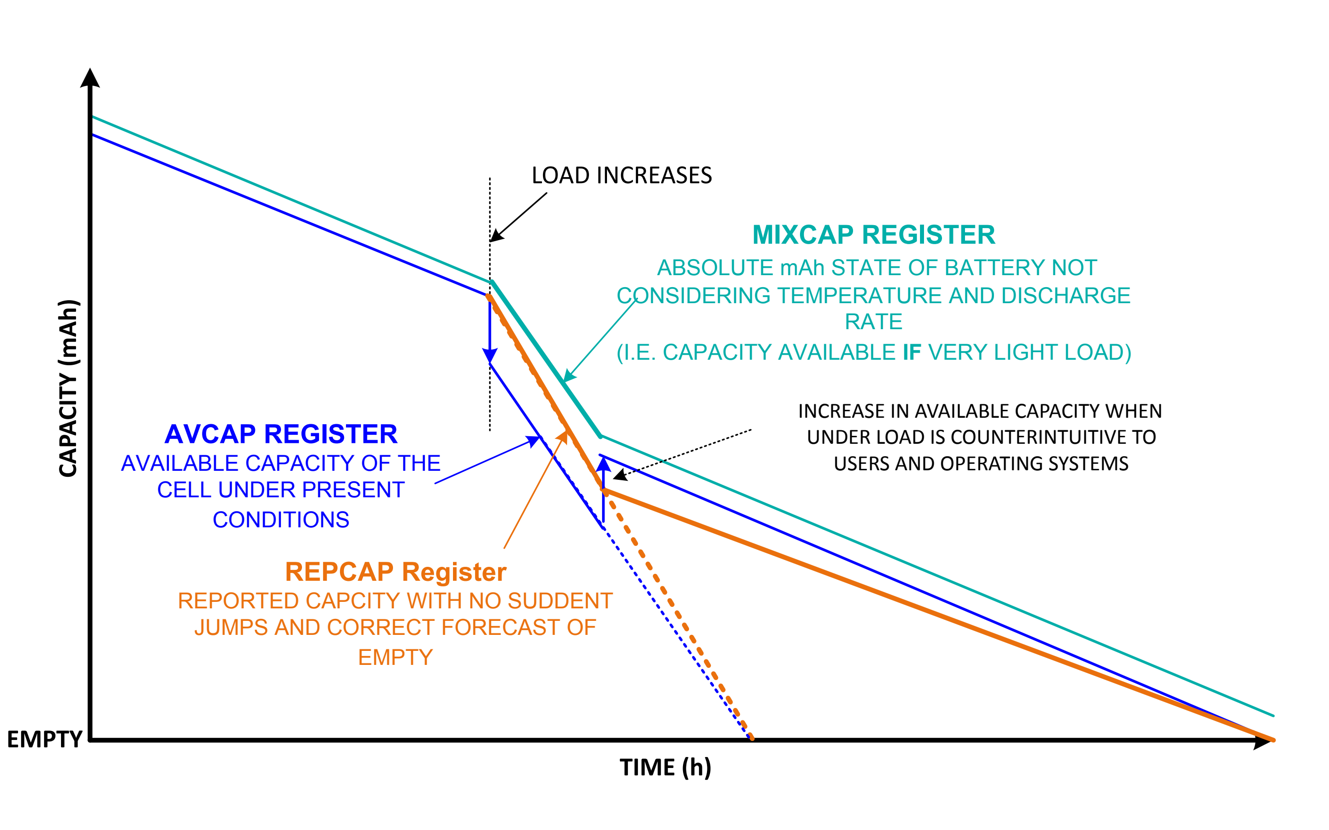


Figure 19. Handling Changes in Empty Calculation

Fuel Gauge Learning

The IC periodically makes internal adjustments to cell characterization and application information to remove initial error and maintain accuracy as the cell ages. These adjustments always occur as small under-corrections to prevent instability of the system and prevent any noticeable jumps in the fuel-gauge outputs. Learning occurs automatically without any input from the host. In addition to estimating the battery's state-of-charge, the IC observes the battery's relaxation response and adjusts the dynamics of the voltage fuel gauge. Registers used by the algorithm include:

- **Application Capacity (*FullCapRep* Register):** This is the total capacity available to the application at full, as described in the *End-of-Charge* section. See the *FullCapRep* register description.
- **Cell Capacity (*FullCapNom* Register):** This is the total cell capacity at full, according to the voltage fuel gauge. This includes some capacity that is not available to the application at high loads and/or low temperature. The IC periodically compares percent change based on an open circuit voltage measurement verses coulomb-count change as the cell charges and discharges, maintaining an accurate estimation of the pack capacity in milliamp-hours as the pack ages. See Figure 20.
- **Voltage Fuel-Gauge Adaptation:** The IC observes the battery's relaxation response and adjusts the dynamics of the voltage fuel gauge. This adaptation adjusts the RComp0 register during qualified cell relaxation events.
- **Empty Compensation:** The IC updates internal data whenever cell empty is detected (*VCell* < *VEmpty*) to account for cell age or other cell deviations from the characterization information.

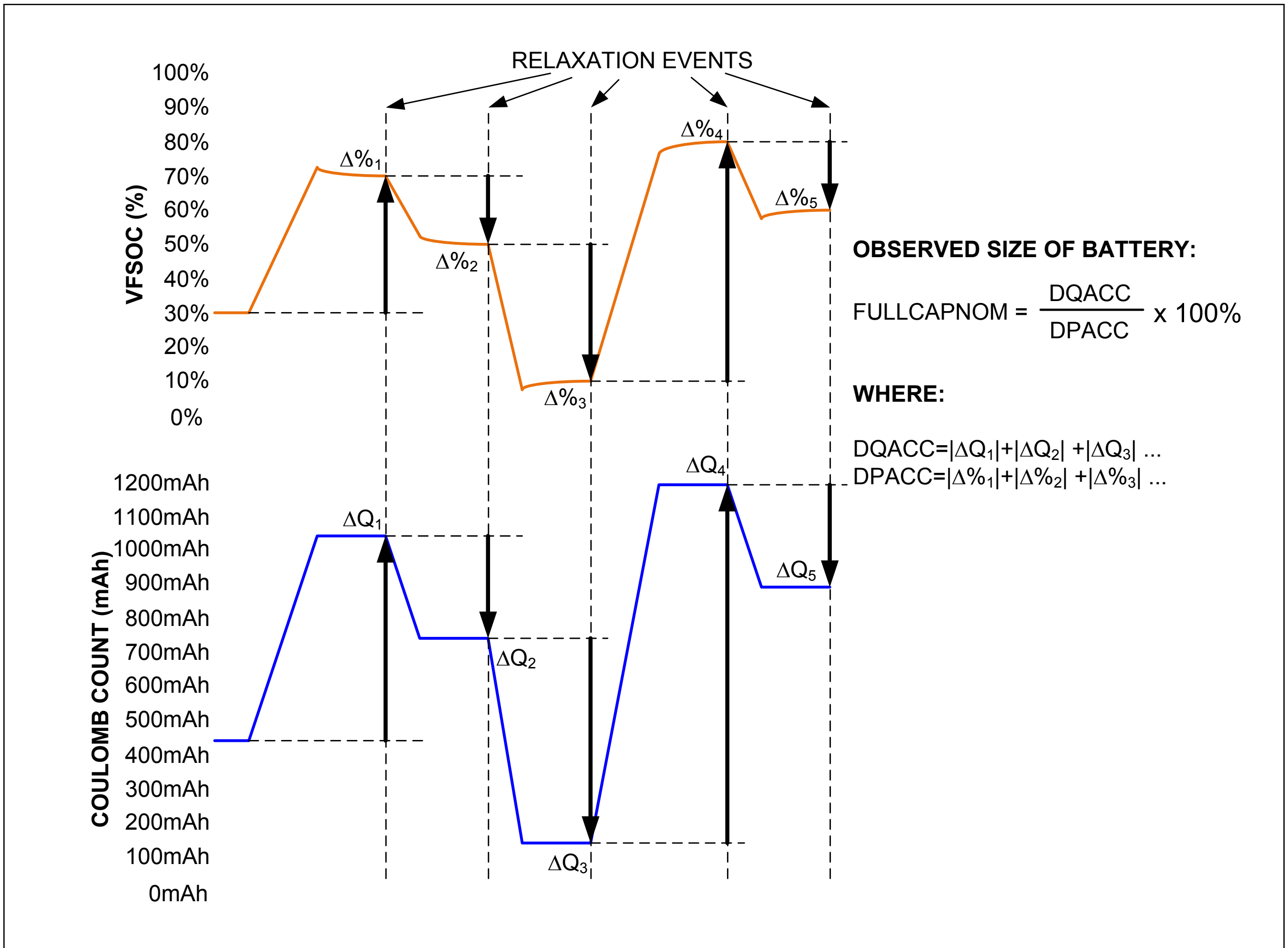


Figure 20. FullCapNom Learning

Converge-To-Empty

The MAX17330 includes a feature that guarantees the fuel gauge output converges to 0% as the cell voltage approaches the empty voltage. As the cell's voltage approaches the expected empty voltage (*AvgVCell* approaches *VEmpty*) the IC smoothly adjusts the rate of change of *RepSOC* so that the fuel gauge reports 0% at the exact time the cell's voltage reaches empty. This prevents minor over or undershoots in the fuel gauge output. See Figure 21.

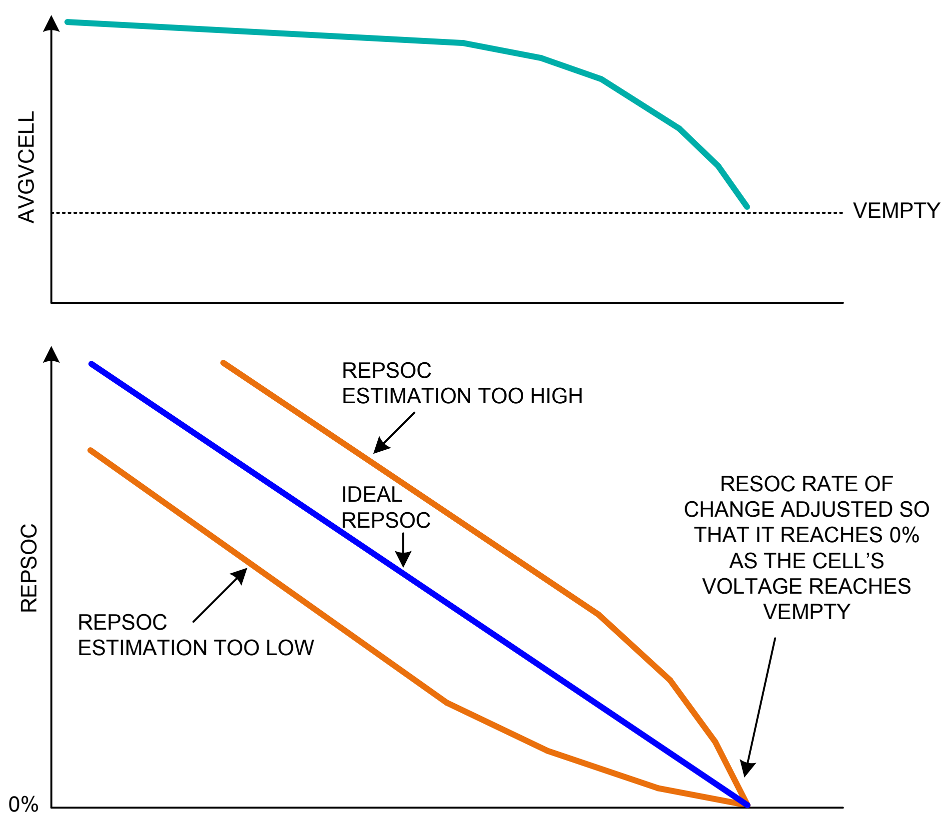


Figure 21. Converge-To-Empty

Determining Fuel-Gauge Accuracy

To determine the true accuracy of a fuel gauge as experienced by end users, the battery should be exercised in a dynamic manner. The end-user accuracy cannot be understood with only simple cycles. To challenge a correction-based fuel gauge such as a coulomb counter, test the battery with partial loading sessions. For example, a typical user can operate the device for ten minutes and then stop use for an hour or more. A robust test method includes these kinds of sessions many times at various loads, temperatures, and duration. Refer to the *Application Note 4799: Cell Characterization Procedure for a ModelGauge m3/ModelGauge m5 Fuel Gauge.*

Initial Accuracy

The IC uses the first voltage reading after power-up or after the cell is connected to the IC to determine the starting output of the fuel gauge. It is assumed that the cell is fully relaxed prior to this reading, however this is not always the case. If there is a load or charge current present, the initial reading is compensated using the characterized internal impedance of the cell (RFast register) to estimate the cell's relaxed voltage. If the cell was recently charged or discharged, the voltage measured by the IC might not represent the true state-of-charge of the cell resulting in initial error in the fuel gauge outputs. In most cases, this error is minor and is quickly removed by the fuel gauge algorithm during the first hour of normal operation.

Cycle+ Age Forecasting

A special feature of the ModelGauge m5 EZ algorithm is the ability to forecast the number of cycles the cell lasts before its end-of-life. This allows an application to adjust a cell's charge profile over time to meet the cycle life requirements of the cell (see Figure 22). The algorithm monitors the change in cell capacity over time and calculates the number of cycles it takes for the cell's capacity to drop to a predefined threshold of 85% of the original. Remaining cycles below 85% of the original capacity are unpredictable and not managed by age forecasting.

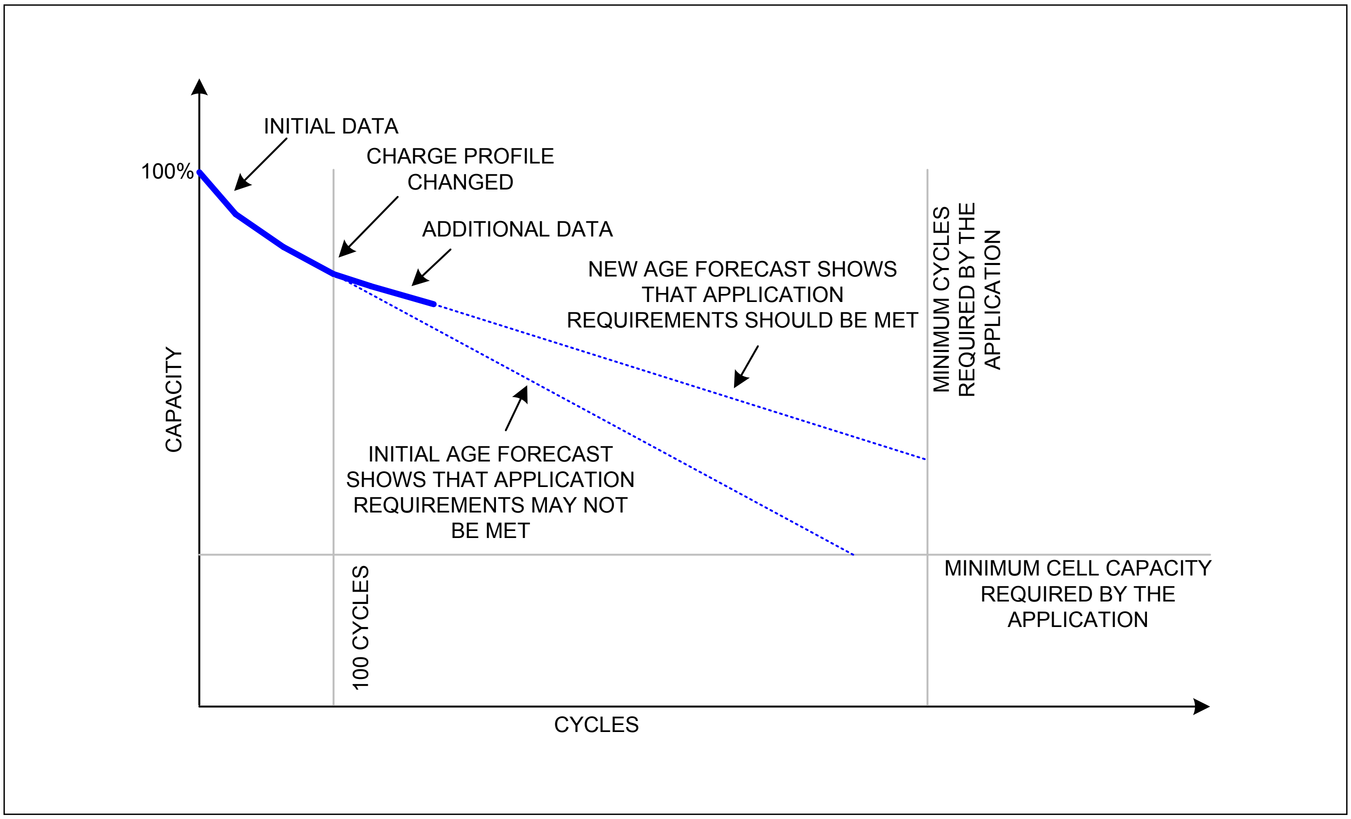


Figure 22. Benefits of Age Forecasting

nAgeFcCfg Register (1E2h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: There is no associated restore location for this register.

The nAgeFcCfg register is used to configure age forecasting functionality. Register data is nonvolatile and is typically configured only once during pack assembly. Table 55 shows the register format.

Table 55. nAgeFcCfg Register (1E2h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
DeadTargetRatio				CycleStart							0	0	0	1	1

DeadTargetRatio: Sets the remaining percentage of initial cell capacity where the cell is considered fully aged. DeadTargetRatio can be adjusted between 75% and 86.72% with an LSb of 0.7813%. For example, if age forecasting was configured to estimate the number of cycles until the cell's capacity dropped to 85.1574% of when it was new, DeadTargetRatio should be programmed to 1101b.

CycleStart: Sets the number of cell cycles before age forecasting calculations begin. CycleStart has a range of 0.00

to 81.92 cycles with an LSb of 0.64 cycles. Since age forecasting estimation becomes more accurate over time, most applications use a default value of 30 cycles.

0: Always write this location 0.

1: Always write this location 1.

AgeForecast Register (0B9h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The AgeForecast register displays the estimated cycle life of the application cell. The AgeForecast value should be compared against the Cycles (017h) register to determine the estimated number of remaining cell cycles. This is accomplished by accumulating the capacity loss per cycle as the cell ages. The result becomes more accurate with each cycle measured. The AgeForecast register has a full range of 0 cycles to 10485 cycles with a 0.16 cycle LSb. This register is recalculated from learned information at power-up.

Age Forecasting Requirements

There are several requirements for proper operation of the age forecasting feature as follows:

1. There is a minimum and maximum cell size that the age forecasting algorithm can handle. Table 56 shows the allowable range of cell sizes that can be accurately age forecasted depending on the size of the sense resistor used in the application. Note this range is different from the current and capacity measurement range for a given sense resistor. See the *Current Measurement* section for details.

Table 56. Minimum and Maximum Cell Sizes for Age Forecasting

SENSE RESISTOR (Ω)	MINIMUM CELL SIZE FOR FORECASTING (mAh)	MAXIMUM CELL SIZE FOR FORECASTING (mAh)
0.005	1600	5000
0.010	800	2500
0.020	400	1250

2. Age forecasting requires a minimum of 100 cycles before achieving reasonable predictions. Ignore the age forecasting output until then.

3. Age forecasting requires a custom characterized battery model to be used by the IC. Age forecasting is not valid when using the default model.

Enabling Age Forecasting

The following steps are required to enable the Age Forecasting feature:

1. Set nNVCfg2.enVT = 0. This function conflicts with age forecasting and must be disabled.

2. Set nFullCapFltr (Register 1AEh) to the value of nFullCapNom.

3. Set nVoltTemp (Register 1AAh) to 0x0001.

4. Set nNVCfg0.enAF = 1 to begin operation.

Battery Life Logging

The MAX17330 can log learned battery information, providing the host with a history of conditions experienced by the cell pack over its lifetime. The IC can store up to 100 snapshots of page 1Ah in nonvolatile memory. Individual registers from page 1Ah are summarized in Table 57. Their nonvolatile backup must be enabled and LOCK1 unlocked in order for logging to occur. See each register's detailed description in other sections of this data sheet. The logging rate follows the "Fibonacci Saving" interval to provide recurring log-saving according to the expected battery lifespan and is configured by nNVCFG2.FibMax and nNVCFG2.FibScl. See the *100 Record Life Logging* section for more details.

Table 57. Life Logging Register Summary

REGISTER ADDRESS	REGISTER NAME	FUNCTION
1A0h	nQRTable00	Learned characterization information used to determine when the cell pack is empty under application conditions.
1A1h	nQRTable10	
1A2h	nQRTable20	
1A3h	nQRTable30	
1A4h	nCycles	Total number of equivalent full cycles seen by the cell since assembly.
1A5h	nFullCapNom	Calculated capacity of the cell independent of application conditions.
1A6h	nRComp0	Learned characterization information related to the voltage fuel gauge.
1A7h	nTempCo	
1A8h	nBattStatus	Contains the permanent battery status information.
1A9h	nFullCapRep	Calculated capacity of the cell under present application conditions.
1AAh	nVoltTemp	The average voltage and temperature seen by the IC at the instance of learned data backup. If Age Forecasting is enabled, this register contains different information.
1ABh	nMaxMinCurr	Maximum and minimum current, voltage, and temperature seen by the IC during this logging window.
1ACh	nMaxMinVolt	
1ADh	nMaxMinTemp	
1AEh	nFaultLog/ nFullCapFltr	If Fault Logging is enabled, this register contains a history of any faults that have occurred during this life segment. If Age Forecasting is enabled, this register contains a highly filtered nFullCapNom.
1AFh	nTimerH	Total elapsed time since cell pack assembly, not including time spent in shutdown mode.

Life Logging Data Example

Figure 23 shows a graphical representation of sample history data read from an IC. Analysis of this data can provide information of cell performance over its lifetime as well as detect any application anomalies that may have affected performance.

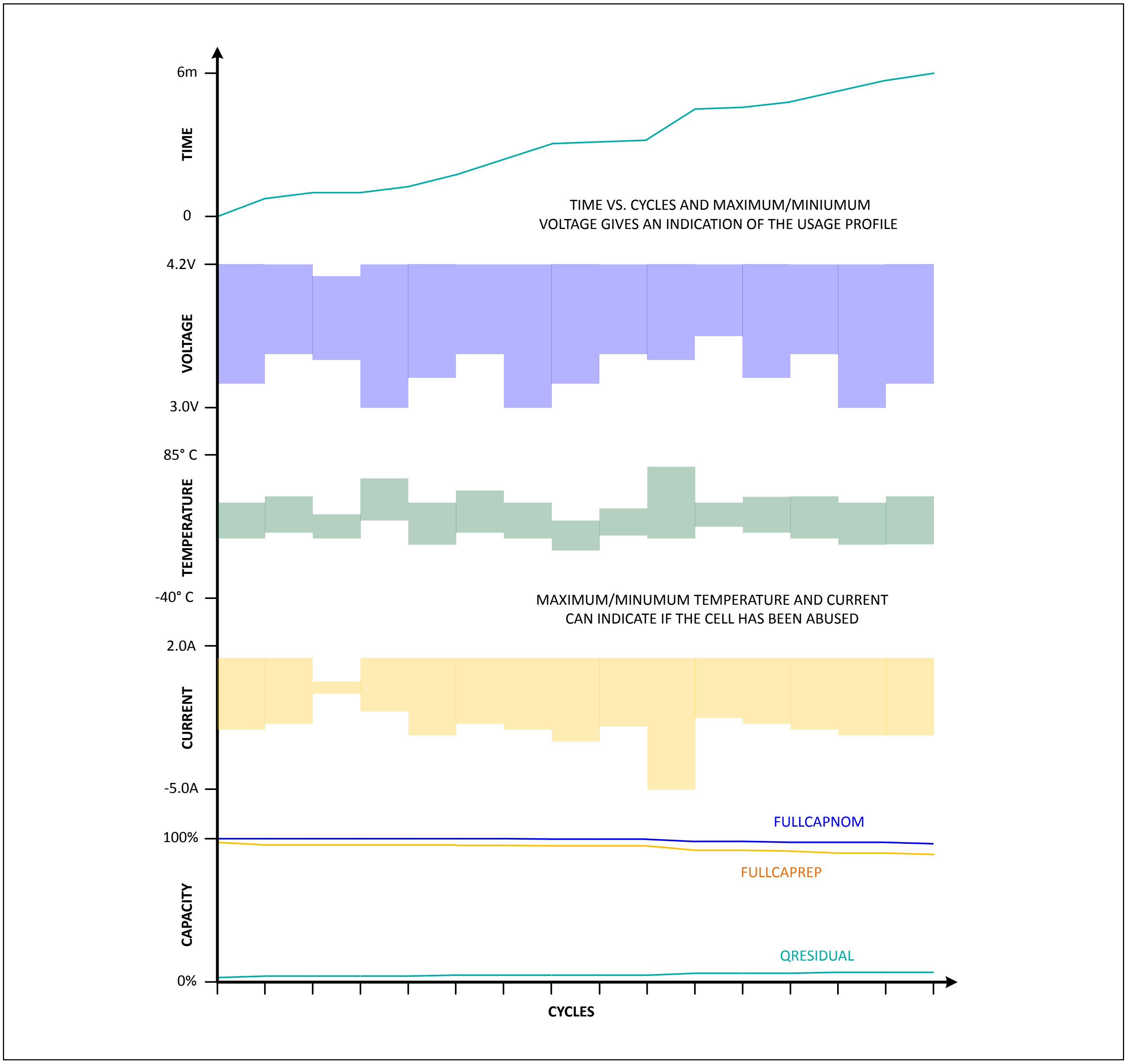


Figure 23. Sample Life Logging Data

Determining Number of Valid Logging Entries

While logging data, the IC begins on history page 1 and continues until all history memory has been used at page 100. Prior to reading history information out of the IC, the host must determine which history pages have been written and which, if any, have write errors and should be ignored. Each page of history information has two associated write flags that indicate if the page has been written and two associated valid flags which indicate if the write was successful. The HISTORY RECALL command [0xE2XX] is used to load the history flags into page 1Fh of IC memory where the host can then read their state. Table 58 shows which command and which page 1Fh address has the flag information for a given history page. For example, to see the write flag information of history pages 1-8, send the 0xE29C command then read address 1F2h. To see the **valid flag** information of pages 1-8, send the 0xE29C command and then read address 1FFh.

Table 58. Reading History Page Flags

ASSOCIATED HISTORY PAGES	COMMAND TO RECALL WRITE FLAGS	WRITE FLAG ADDRESS	COMMAND TO RECALL VALID FLAGS	VALID FLAG ADDRESS
1-8	0xE29C	1F2h	0xE29C	1FFh
9-16		1F3h	0xE29D	1F0h
17-24		1F4h		1F1h
25-32		1F5h		1F2h
33-40		1F6h		1F3h
41-48		1F7h		1F4h
49-56		1F8h		1F5h
57-64		1F9h		1F6h
65-72		1FAh		1F7h
73-80		1FBh		1F8h
81-88		1FCh		1F9h
89-96		1FDh		1FAh
97-100		1FEh		1FBh

Once the write flag and valid flag information is read from the IC, it must be decoded. Each register holds two flags for a given history page. Figure 24 shows the register format. The flags for a given history page are always spaced 8-bits apart from one another. For example, history page 1 flags are always located at bit positions D0 and D8, history page 84 flags are at locations D3 and D11, etc. Note that the last flag register contains information for only three pages, in this case the upper 5-bits of each byte should be ignored.

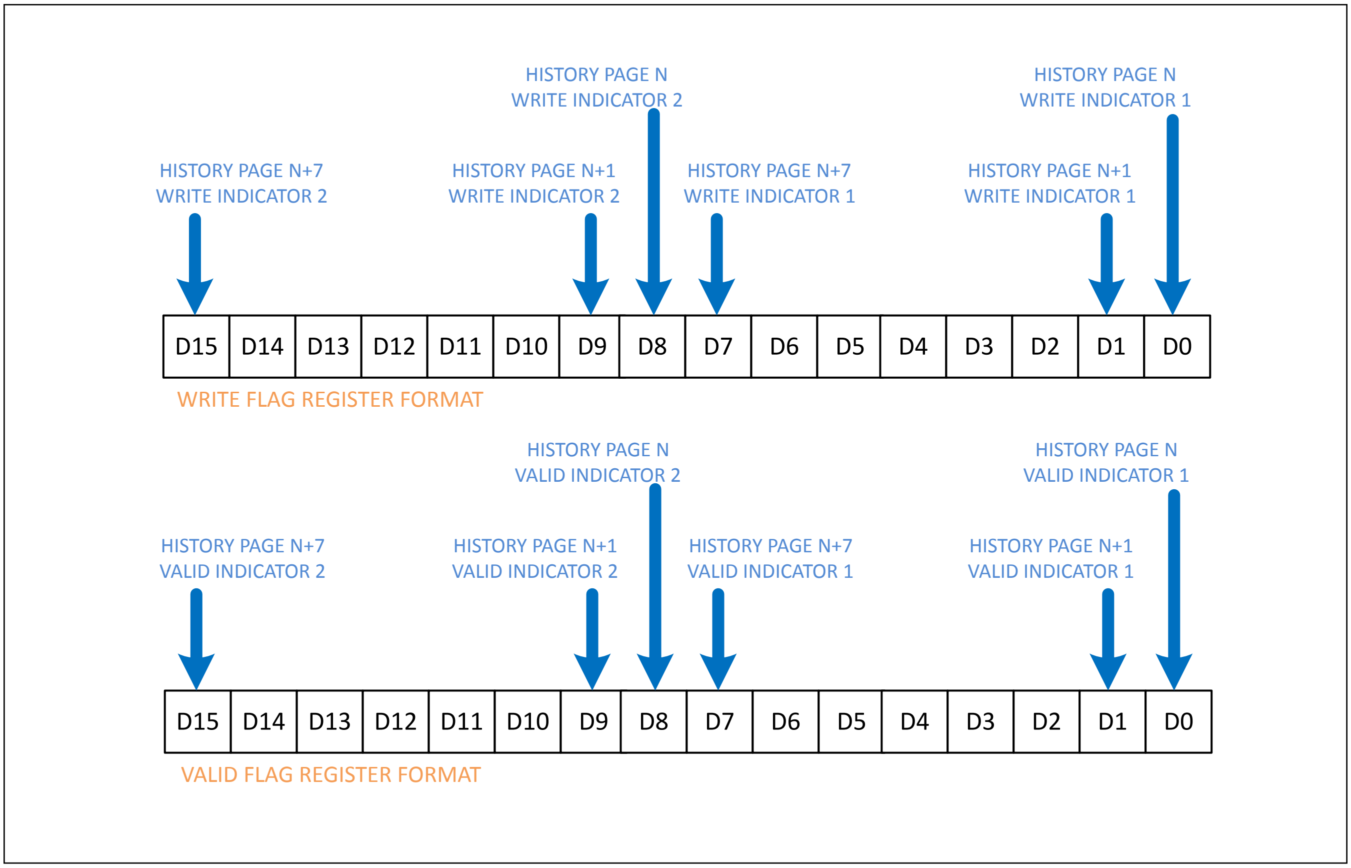


Figure 24. Write Flag Register and Valid Flag Register Formats

Once all four flags for a given history page are known, the host can determine if the history page contains valid data. If either write flag is set, then data has been written to that page by the IC. If both write flags are clear, the page has not yet been written. Due to application conditions, the write might not have been successful. Next, check the valid flags; if either valid flag is set, the data should be considered good. If both valid flags are clear, then the data should be considered bad and the host should ignore it. Table 59 shows how to decode the flags.

Table 59. Decoding History Page Flags

WRITE INDICATOR 1	WRITE INDICATOR 2	VALID INDICATOR 1	VALID INDICATOR 2	PAGE STATUS
0	0	X	X	Page empty.
1	X	0	0	Write failure. Page has invalid data.
		1	X	Write success. Page has valid data.
		X	1	
X	1	0	0	Write failure. Page has invalid data.
		1	X	Write success. Page has valid data.
		X	1	

Reading History Data

Once all pages of valid history data have been identified, they can be read from the IC using the HISTORY RECALL command. Table 60 shows the command and history page relationship. After sending the command, wait t_{RECALL} then read the history data from IC page 1Fh. Each page of history data has the same format as page 1Ah. For example, nCycles is found at address 1A4h and nCycles history are at 1F4h, nTimerH is located at address 1AFh, and nTimerH history is located at address 1FFh, etc.

Table 60. Reading History Data

COMMAND	HISTORY PAGE RECALLED TO PAGE 1EH
0xE22E	Page 1
0xE22F	Page 2
...	...
0xE291	Page 100

History Data Reading Example

The host would like to read the life logging data from a given IC. The host must first determine how many history pages have been written and if there are any errors. To start checking history page 1, the host sends 0xE29C to the command register, wait t_{RECALL}, then read location 1F2h. If either the D0 or the D8 bit in the read data word is a logic 1, the host knows that history page 1 contains history data. The host can then check page 2 (bits D1 and D9) up to page 7 (bits D7 and D15). The host continues to pages 8 to 16 by reading location 1F3h and then repeating individual bit testing. This process is repeated for each command and address listed in Table 58 until the host finds a history page where both write flags read logic 0. This is the first unwritten page. All previous pages contain data, all following pages are empty.

The host must now determine which, if any, of the history pages have bad data and must be ignored. The above process is repeated for every location looking at the valid flags instead of the write flags. Any history page where both valid flags read logic 0 is considered bad due to a write failure and that page should be ignored. Once the host has a complete list of valid written history pages, commands 0xE22E to 0xE291 can be used to read the history information from page 1Fh for processing.

Note that this example was simplified to describe the procedure. A more efficient method would be for the host to send a history command once and then read all associated registers. For example, the host could send the 0xE29C command once and then read the entire memory space of 1F0h to 1FFh which would contain all write flags for pages 1 to 100 (1F2h to 1FEh) and all valid flags for pages 1 to 8 (1FFh). This applies to all 0xE2XX history commands.

See the *Appendix A: Reading History Data Pseudo-Code Example* section for a pseudo-code example of reading history data.

ModelGauge m5 EZ Algorithm Input Registers

The following registers are inputs to the ModelGauge algorithm and store characterization information for the application cells as well as important application specific specifications. They are described only briefly here. Contact Analog Devices for information regarding cell characterization.

nXTable0 (180h) to nXTable11 (18Bh) Registers

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: There are no associated restore locations for these registers.

Cell characterization information is used by the ModelGauge algorithm to determine capacity versus operating conditions. This table comes from battery characterization data. These are nonvolatile memory locations.

nOCVTable0 (190h) to nOCVTable11 (19Bh) Registers

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: There are no associated restore locations for these registers.

Cell characterization information is used by the ModelGauge algorithm to determine capacity versus operating conditions.

This table comes from battery characterization data. These are nonvolatile memory locations.

nQRTable00 (1A0h) to nQRTable30 (1A3h) Registers

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Backup and Restore: QRTable20 and QRTable30 (032h, 042h)

The nQRTable00 to nQRTable30 register locations contain characterization information regarding cell capacity that is not available under certain application conditions.

nFullSOCThr Register (1C6h)

Register Type: Percentage

Nonvolatile Restore: FullSOCThr (013h) if nNVCfg1.enFT is set.

Alternate Initial Value: 80%

The nFullSOCThr register gates detection of end-of-charge. VFSOC must be larger than the nFullSOCThr value before nIChgTerm is compared to the *AvgCurrent* register value. The recommended nFullSOCThr register setting for most custom characterized applications is 95% . For EZ performance applications, the recommendation is 80% (0x5005). See the nIChgTerm register description and *End-of-Charge* section for details. Table 61 shows the register format.

Table 61. nFullSOCThr (1C6h)/FullSOCThr (013h) Register Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
nFullSOCThr													1	0	1

nVEmpty Register (19Eh)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: None

The nVempty register sets thresholds related to empty detection during operation. Table 62 shows the register format.

Table 62. nVEmpty (19Eh) Register Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
VE									VR						

VE: Empty Voltage. Sets the voltage level for detecting empty. A 10mV resolution gives a 0V to 5.11V range. This value is written to 3.3V after reset if nonvolatile backup is disabled.

VR: Recovery Voltage. Sets the voltage level for clearing empty detection. Once the cell voltage rises above this point, empty voltage detection is reenabled. A 40mV resolution gives a 0V to 5.08V range. This value is written to 3.88V after reset if nonvolatile backup is disabled.

nDesignCap Register(1B3h)

Register Type: Capacity

Nonvolatile Restore: DesignCap (018h) if nNVCfg0.enDC is set

Alternate Initial Value: FullCapRep register value

The nDesignCap register holds the expected capacity of the cell. This value is used to determine age and health of the cell by comparing against the measured present cell capacity.

nRComp0 Register (1A6h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: RComp0 (038h)

The nRComp0 register holds characterization information critical to computing the open circuit voltage of a cell under loaded conditions.

nTempCo Register (1A7h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: TempCo (039h)

The nTempCo register holds temperature compensation information for the nRComp0 register value.

ModelGauge m5 EZ Algorithm Configuration Registers

The following registers allow operation of the ModelGauge m5 EZ algorithm to be adjusted for the application. It is recommended that the default values for these registers be used.

nFilterCfg Register (19Dh)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: FilterCfg (029h) if nNVCfg0.enFCfg is set.

Alternate Initial Value: 0x0EA4

The nFilterCfg register sets the averaging time period for all A/D readings, for mixing OCV results, and coulomb count results. It is recommended that these values are not changed unless required by the application. Table 63 shows the nFilterCfg register format.

Table 63. FilterCfg (029h)/nFilterCfg (19Dh) Register Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
0	0	TEMP			MIX				VOLT			CURR			

CURR: Sets the time constant for the AvgCurrent register. The default POR value of 0100b gives a time constant of 5.625s. The equation setting the period is:

AvgCurrent time constant = 45s x $2^{(CURR-7)}$

VOLT: Sets the time constant for the AvgVCell register. The default POR value of 010b gives a time constant of 45s. The equation setting the period is:

AvgVCell time constant = 45s x $2^{(VOLT-2)}$

MIX: Sets the time constant for the mixing algorithm. The default POR value of 1101b gives a time constant of 12.8 hours. The equation setting the period is:

Mixing Period = 45s x $2^{(MIX-3)}$

TEMP: Sets the time constant for the AvgTA register. The default POR value of 0001b gives a time constant of 1.5 minutes. The equation setting the period is:

AvgTA time constant = 45s x 2^{TEMP}

0: Write these bits to 0.

nRelaxCfg Register (1B6h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: RelaxCfg (0A0h) if nNVCfg0.enRCfg is set.

Alternate Initial Value: 0x2039

The nRelaxCfg register defines how the IC detects if the cell is in a relaxed state. See Figure 25. For a cell to be considered relaxed, current flow through the cell must be kept at a minimum while the change in the cell's voltage over time (dV/dt) shows little or no change. If AvgCurrent remains below the LOAD threshold while VCell changes less than the dV threshold over two consecutive periods of dt, the cell is considered relaxed. Table 64 shows the nRelaxCfg register format.

Table 64. RelaxCfg (0A0h)/nRelaxCfg (1B6h) Register Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
LOAD							dV					dt			

LOAD: Sets the threshold, which the AvgCurrent register is compared against. The AvgCurrent register must remain below this threshold value for the cell to be considered unloaded. Load is an unsigned 7-bit value where 1 LSb = 50μV. The default value is 800μV.

dV: Sets the threshold, which VCell is compared against. If the cell's voltage changes by less than dV over two consecutive periods set by dt, the cell is considered relaxed; dV has a range of 0mV to 40mV where 1 LSb = 1.25mV. The default value is 3.75mV.

dt: Sets the time period over which change in VCell is compared against dV. If the cell's voltage changes by less than dV over two consecutive periods set by dt, the cell is considered relaxed. The default value is 1.5 minutes. The comparison period is calculated as:

Relaxation period = $2^{(dt-8)}$ x 45s

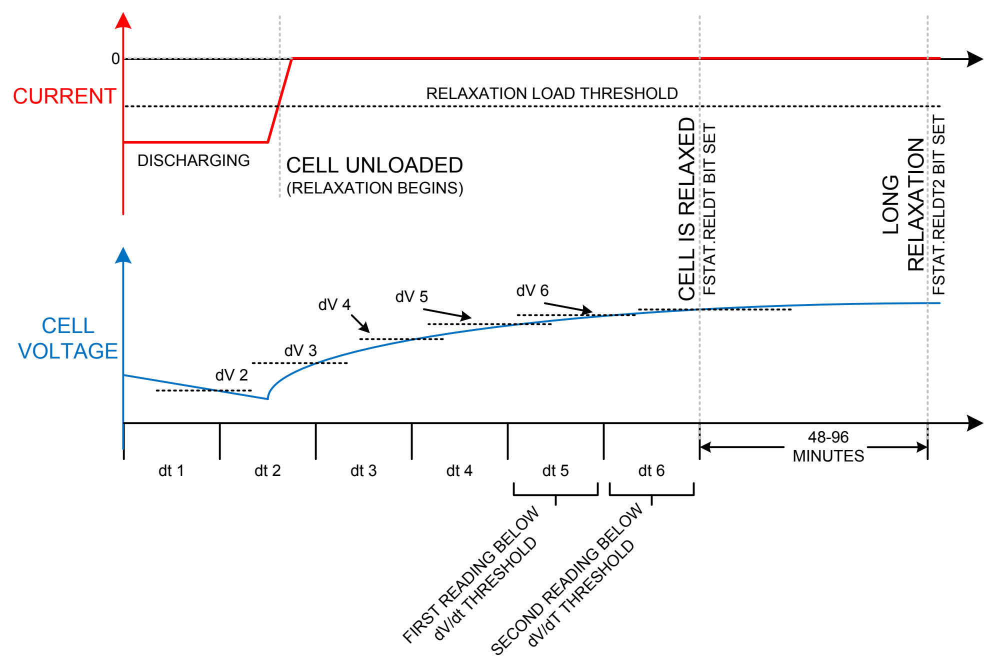


Figure 25. Cell Relaxation Detection

nTTFCfg Register (1C7h)/CV_MixCap (0B6h) and CV_HalfTime (0B7h) Registers

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: There is no associated restore location for this register.

Alternate Initial Value: CV_HalfTime = 0xA00 (30 minutes) and CV_MixCap = 75% x *FullCapNom*.

The nTTFCfg register configures parameters related to the time-to-full (TTF) calculation. There is no associated RAM register location that this register is recalled into after device reset. These parameters can be tuned for best TTF performance during characterization by Maxim. Table 65 shows the register format.

Table 65. nTTFCfg Register (1C7h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
nCV_HalfTime								nCV_MixCapRatio							

nCV_HalfTime: Sets the HalfTime value with an LSb of 45 seconds which gives a full scale range of 0 seconds to 192 minutes.

nCV_MixCapRatio: Sets the MixCapRatio with an LSb of 1/256 which gives a full scale range of 0 to 0.9961.

nConvgCfg Register (1B7h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: There is no associated restore location for this register.

The nConvgCfg register configures operation of the converge-to-empty feature. The recommended value for nConvgCfg is 0x2241. Table 66 shows the nConvgCfg register format. Set nConvgCfg = 0x0000 to disable the converge-to-empty functionality.

Table 66. nConvgCfg Register (1B7h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
RepLow				VoltLowOff					MinSlopeX				RepL_per_stage		

RepL_per_stage: Adjusts the RepLow threshold setting depending on the present learn stage using the following equation. This allows the RepLow threshold to be at higher levels for earlier learn states. RepL_per_stage has an LSb of 1% which gives a range of 0% to 7%.

RepLow Threshold = RepLow Field Setting + RemainingStages x RepL_per_stage

MinSlopeX: Sets the amount of slope-shallowing which occurs when *RepSOC* falls below RepLow. MinSlopeX LSb corresponds to a ratio of 1/16 which gives a full range of 0 to 15/16.

VoltLowOff: When the *AvgVCell* register value drops below the VoltLow threshold, *RepCap* begins to bend downwards by a ratio defined by the following equation. VoltLowOff has an LSb of 20mV which gives a range of 0mV to 620mV.

RepCap = (*AvgVCell* - *nVEmpty*)/VoltLowOff

RepLow: Sets the threshold below which *RepCap* begins to bend upwards. The RepLow field LSb is 2% giving a full-scale range from 0% to 30%.

nRippleCfg Register (1B1h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: There is no associated restore location for this register.

The nRippleCfg register configures ripple measurement and ripple compensation. The recommended value for this register is 0x0204. Table 67 shows the register format.

Table 67. nRippleCfg Register (1B1h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
kDV													NR		

NR: Sets the filter magnitude for ripple observation as defined by the following equation giving a range of 1.4 seconds to 180 seconds.

Ripple Time Range = 1.4 seconds x 2^{NR}

kDV: Sets the corresponding amount of capacity to compensate proportional to the ripple.

nMiscCfg Register (1B2h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: MiscCfg (00Fh) if nNVCfg0.enMC is set.

Alternate Initial Value: 0x3070

The nMiscCfg control register enables various other functions of the device. The nMiscCfg register default values should not be changed unless specifically required by the application. Table 68 shows the register format.

Table 68. MiscCfg (00Fh)/nMiscCfg (1B2h) Register Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
FUS				0	0	MR					1	0	0	SACFG	

0: Bit must be written 0. Do not write 1.

1: Bit must be written 1. Do not write 0.

SACFG: SOC Alert Config. SOC Alerts can be generated by monitoring any of the SOC registers as follows. SACFG defaults to 00 at power-up:

0 0 SOC Alerts are generated based on the RepSOC register.

0 1 SOC Alerts are generated based on the AvSOC register.

1 0 SOC Alerts are generated based on the MixSOC register.

1 1 SOC Alerts are generated based on the VFSOC register.

MR: Mixing Rate. This value sets the strength of the servo mixing rate after the final mixing state has been reached (greater than 2.08 complete cycles). The units are MR0 = 6.25μV, giving a range up to 19.375mA with a standard 10mΩ sense resistor. Setting this value to 00000b disables servo mixing and the IC continues with time-constant mixing indefinitely. The default setting is 18.75μV or 1.875mA with a standard sense resistor.

FUS: Full Update Slope. This field prevents jumps in the RepSOC and FullCapRep registers by setting the rate of adjustment of FullCapRep near the end of a charge cycle. The update slope adjustment range is from 2% per 15 minutes (0000b) to a maximum of 32% per 15 minutes (1111b).

ModelGauge m5 EZ Algorithm Additional Registers

The following registers contain intermediate ModelGauge m5 data which can be useful for debugging or performance analysis. The values in these registers are initialized to 480ms after the IC is reset.

Timer Register (03Eh)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Backup: None

Initial Value: 0x0000

This register holds timing information for the fuel gauge. It is available to the user for debugging purposes. The Timer register LSb is equal to 175.8ms which gives a full-scale range of 0 hours to 3.2 hours.

dQAcc Register (045h)

Register Type: Capacity (2mAh/LSB)

Nonvolatile Backup: Translated from nFullCapNom

Alternate Initial Value: 0x0017 (368mAh)

This register tracks change in battery charge between relaxation points. It is available to the user for debugging purposes.

dPAcc Register (046h)

Register Type: Percentage (1/16% per LSB)

Nonvolatile Backup: None

Initial Value: 0x0190 (25%)

This register tracks change in battery state-of-charge between relaxation points. It is available to the user for debugging purposes.

QResidual Register (00Ch)

Register Type: Capacity

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The QResidual register displays the calculated amount of charge in milliamp-hours that is presently inside of (but cannot be removed from) the cell under present application conditions. This value is subtracted from the MixCap value to determine the capacity available to the user under present conditions (AvCap).

VFSOC Register (0FFh)

Register Type: Percentage

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The VFSOC register holds the calculated present state-of-charge of the battery according to the voltage fuel gauge.

VFOCV Register (0FBh)

Register Type: Voltage

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The VFOCV register contains the calculated open-circuit voltage of the cell as determined by the voltage fuel gauge. This value is used in other internal calculations.

QH Register (4Dh)

Register Type: Capacity

Nonvolatile Backup: None

Alternate Initial Value: 0x0000

The QH register displays the raw coulomb count generated by the device. This register is used internally as an input to the mixing algorithm. Monitoring changes in QH over time can be useful for debugging device operation.

AvCap Register (01Fh)

Register Type: Capacity

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The AvCap register holds the calculated available capacity of the cell pack based on all inputs from the ModelGauge m5 EZ algorithm including empty compensation. The register value is an unfiltered calculation. Jumps in the reported value can be caused by changes in the application such as abrupt changes in load current or temperature. See the *Fuel-Gauge Empty Compensation* section for details.

AvSOC Register (00Eh)

Register Type: Percentage

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The AvSOC register holds the calculated available state-of-charge of the cell based on all inputs from the ModelGauge m5 EZ algorithm including empty compensation. The AvSOC percentage corresponds with *AvCap* and *FullCapNom*. The AvSOC register value is an unfiltered calculation. Jumps in the reported value can be caused by changes in the application such as abrupt changes in load current or temperature. See the *Fuel-Gauge Empty Compensation* section for details.

MixSOC Register (00Dh)

Register Type: Percentage

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The MixSOC register holds the calculated present state-of-charge of the cell before any empty compensation adjustments are performed. MixSOC corresponds with *MixCap* and *FullCapNom*. See the *Fuel-Gauge Empty Compensation* section for details.

MixCap Register (02Bh)

Register Type: Capacity

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The MixCap register holds the calculated remaining capacity of the cell before any empty compensation adjustments are performed. See the *Fuel-Gauge Empty Compensation* section for details.

VFRemCap Register (04Ah)

Register Type: Capacity

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The VFRemCap register holds the remaining capacity of the cell as determined by the voltage fuel gauge before any empty compensation adjustments are performed. See the *Fuel-Gauge Empty Compensation* section for details.

SOCHold Register (0D0h)

Register Type: Special

The SOCHold register configures operation of the hold-before-empty feature and also the enable bit for 99% hold during charge. The default value for SOCHold is 0x1002. Table 69 shows the SOCHold register format.

Table 69. SOCHold (0D0h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
0	0	0	99%HoldEn	EmptyVoltHold							EmptySocHold				

EmptyVoltHold: The positive voltage offset that is added to VEmpty. Empty detection/learning occurs at the point that VCell = VEmpty + EmptyVoltHold. EmptyVoltHold has an LSb of 10mV which gives a range of 0mV to 1270mV.

EmptySocHold: It is the threshold at which RepSOC is held constant. After empty detection/learning occurs, the RepSOC update continues as expected. EmptySocHold has an LSb of 0.5% which gives it a full range of 0% to 15.5%.

99%HoldEn: Enable bit for 99% hold feature during charging. When enabled, RepSOC holds a maximum value of 99% until Full Qualified is reached.

FStat Register (03Dh)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The FStat register is a read-only register that monitors the status of the ModelGauge algorithm. Do not write to this register location. Table 70 is the FStat register format.

Table 70. FStat Register (03Dh) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
X	X	X	X	X	X	RelDt	EDet	FQ	RelDt2	X	X	X	X	X	DNR

DNR: Data Not Ready. This bit is set to 1 at cell insertion and remains set until the output registers have been updated. Afterwards, the IC clears this bit indicating the fuel gauge calculations are now up to date. This takes between 445ms and 1.845s depending on whether the IC was in a powered state prior to the cell-insertion event.

RelDt2: Long Relaxation. This bit is set to 1 whenever the ModelGauge m5 EZ algorithm detects that the cell has been relaxed for a period of 48 to 96 minutes or longer. This bit is cleared to 0 whenever the cell is no longer in a relaxed state. See Figure 28.

FQ: Full Qualified. This bit is set when all charge termination conditions have been met. See the *End-of-Charge* section for details.

EDet: Empty Detection. This bit is set to 1 when the IC detects that the cell empty point has been reached. This bit is reset to 0 when the cell voltage rises above the recovery threshold. See the *nVEmpty* register for details.

RelDt: Relaxed cell detection. This bit is set to a 1 whenever the ModelGauge m5 EZ algorithm detects that the cell is in a fully relaxed state. This bit is cleared to 0 whenever a current greater than the load threshold is detected. See Figure 28.

X: Don’t Care. This bit is undefined and can be logic 0 or 1.

nLearnCfg Register (19Fh)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: LearnCfg (0A1h) if nNVCfg0.enLCfg is set.

Alternate Initial Value: 0x2687

The nLearnCfg register controls all functions relating to adaptation during operation. Table 71 shows the register format.

Table 71. LearnCfg (0A1h)/nLearnCfg (19Fh) Register Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
0	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	1		LS		0	1	1	1

0: Bit must be written 0. Do not write 1 unless guided by Analog Devices.

1: Bit must be written 1. Do not write 0 unless guided by Analog Devices.

LS: Learn Stage. The Learn Stage value controls the influence of the voltage fuel gauge on the mixing algorithm. The Learn Stage defaults to 0h, making the voltage fuel gauge dominate. The Learn Stage then advances to 7h over the course of two full cell cycles to make the coulomb counter dominate. The host software can write the Learn Stage value to 7h to advance to the final stage at any time. Writing any value between 1h and 6h is ignored.

Memory

The memory space of the MAX17330 is divided into 32 pages, each containing 16 registers where each register is 16-bits wide. Registers are addressed using an internal 9-bit range of 000h to 1FFh. Externally, registers are accessed with an 8-bit address for 2-wire communication. Registers are grouped by functional block. See the functional descriptions for details of each register's functionality. Certain memory blocks can be permanently locked to prevent accidental overwrite, see the *Locking Memory Blocks* section for details. Table 72 shows the full memory map of the IC. Note that some individual user registers are located on RESERVED memory pages. These locations can be accessed normally while the remainder of the page is considered RESERVED. Memory locations listed as RESERVED should never be written to. Data read from RESERVED locations are not defined.

Table 72. Top Level Memory Map

REGISTER PAGE	LOCK	DESCRIPTION	2-WIRE SLAVE ADDRESS (8-BIT)	2-WIRE PROTOCOL	2-WIRE EXTERNAL ADDRESS RANGE
00h	—	MODELGAUGE m5 EZ DATA BLOCK	6Ch	I^2C	00h-4Fh
01h-04h	LOCK2				
05h-0Ah		RESERVED			
0Bh	LOCK2	MODELGAUGE m5 EZ DATA BLOCK (continued)	6Ch	I^2C	B0h-BFh
0Ch	SHA	SHA MEMORY	6Ch	I^2C	C0h-CFh
0Dh	LOCK2	MODELGAUGE m5 EZ DATA BLOCK (continued)	6Ch	I^2C	D0h-DFh
0Eh-0Fh	—	RESERVED	—	—	—
10h-17h	—	SBS DATA BLOCK	16h	SBS	00h-7Fh
18h-19h	LOCK3	MODELGAUGE m5 EZ NONVOLATILE MEMORY BLOCK	16h	I^2C	80h-EFh
1Ah-1Bh	LOCK1	LIFE LOGGING and CONFIGURATION NONVOLATILE MEMORY BLOCK			
1Ch	LOCK4	CONFIGURATION NONVOLATILE MEMORY BLOCK			
1Dh	LOCK5	CHARGING AND PROTECTION NONVOLATILE MEMORY BLOCK			
1Eh	LOCK1	USER and SBS NONVOLATILE MEMORY BLOCK			

Table 72. Top Level Memory Map (continued)

1Fh	—	NONVOLATILE HISTORY	16h	I2C	F0h-FFh

Table 73. Individual Registers

REGISTER ADDRESS	LOCK	DESCRIPTION	2-WIRE SLAVE ADDRESS	2-WIRE PROTOCOL	2-WIRE EXTERNAL ADDRESS RANGE
060h	—	Command REGISTER	6Ch	I2C	60h
061h	—	CommStat REGISTER	6Ch	I2C	61h
07Fh	—	Lock REGISTER	6Ch	I2C	7Fh

ModelGauge m5 EZ Memory Space

Registers that relate to the functionality of the ModelGauge m5 EZ fuel gauge are located on pages 00h-04h and are continued on pages 0Bh and 0Dh. See the *ModelGauge m5 EZ Algorithm* section for details of specific register operation. These locations (other than page 00h) can be permanently locked by setting LOCK2. Register locations shown in gray are reserved locations and should not be written to. See Table 74.

Table 74. ModelGauge m5 EZ Register Memory Map

PAGE/ WORD	00XH	01XH	02XH	03XH	04XH	0AXH	0BXH	0DXH
0h	Status	FullCapRep	TTF	Reserved	AvgDieTemp	RelaxCfg	Status2	SOCHold
1h	VAlrtTh	TTE	DevName	Reserved	Reserved	LearnCfg	Power	Reserved
2h	TAlrtTh	VCellRep	CurrRep	QRTable20	QRTable30	Reserved	VRipple	Reserved
3h	SAlrtTh	FullSocThr	FullCapNom	Reserved	Reserved	ChgStat	AvgPower	Reserved
4h	AtRate	RCell	Reserved	DieTemp	Reserved	MaxPeakPower	Reserved	AvgCell1
5h	RepCap	FETTemp	Reserved	FullCap	dQAcc	SusPeakPower	TTFCfg	Reserved
6h	RepSOC	AvgTA	Reserved	IAvgEmpty	dPAcc	PackResistance	CVMixCap	Reserved
7h	Age	Cycles	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	SysResistance	CVHalfTime	Batt
8h	MaxMinVolt	DesignCap	Charging Current	Reserved	Reserved	MinSysVoltage	CGTempCo	Cell1
9h	MaxMinTemp	AvgVCell	FilterCfg	FStat2	ProtTmrStat	MPPCurrent	AgeForecast	ProtStatus
Ah	MaxMinCurr	VCell	Charging Voltage	Reserved	VFRemCap	SPPCurrent	Reserved	FProtStat
Bh	Config	Temp	MixCap	Reserved	Reserved	Config2	FOTPSTAT	PCKP
Ch	QResidual	Current	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	IAlrtTh	Reserved	AtQResidual
Dh	MixSOC	AvgCurrent	Reserved	FStat	QH	MinVolt	Reserved	AtTTE
Eh	AvSOC	IChgTerm	Reserved	Timer	QL	MinCurr	TimerH	AtAvSOC
Fh	MiscCfg	AvCap	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	ProtAlrt	Reserved	AtAvCap

Nonvolatile Memory

Nonvolatile Memory Map

Certain ModelGauge m5 EZ and device configuration values are stored in nonvolatile memory to prevent data loss if the IC loses power. The MAX17330 internally updates page 1Ah values over time based on actual performance of the ModelGauge m5 EZ algorithm. The host system does not need to access this memory space during operation. Nonvolatile data from other accessible register locations is internally mirrored into the nonvolatile memory block automatically. Note that non-volatile memory has a limited number of writes. **User accessible configuration memory is limited to seven writes. Internal and external updates to page 1Ah as the fuel gauge algorithm learns are limited to 100 writes. Do not exceed these write limits.** Table 75 shows the nonvolatile memory register map.

Table 75. Nonvolatile Register Memory Map (Slave Address 0x16)

PAGE/ WORD	18XH	19XH	1AXH[1]	1BXH	1CXH	1DXH	1EXH
0h	nXTable0	nOCVTable0	nQRTable00	nConfig	nChgCtrl1	nUVPrtTh	User Memory
1h	nXTable1	nOCVTable1	nQRTable10	nRippleCfg	nReserved	nTPrtTh1	nScOcvLim
2h	nXTable2	nOCVTable2	nQRTable20	nMiscCfg	nChgCfg0	nTPrtTh3	nAgeFcCfg
3h	nXTable3	nOCVTable3	nQRTable30	nDesignCap	nChgCtrl0	nIPrtTh1	nDesignVoltage
4h	nXTable4	nOCVTable4	nCycles	nI2CCfg	nRGain	nVPrtTh2 /Reserved	nMiscCfg2
5h	nXTable5	nOCVTable5	nFullCapNom	nPackCfg	nPackResistance	nTPrtTh2	Reserved
6h	nXTable6	nOCVTable6	nRComp0	nRelaxCfg	nFullSOCThr	nProtMiscTh	nManfctrDate
7h	nXTable7	nOCVTable7	nTempCo	nConvgCfg	nTTFCfg	nProtCfg	nFirstUsed
8h	nXTable8	nOCVTable8	nBattStatus	nNVCfg0	nCGain	nIChgCfg	nSerialNumber0
9h	nXTable9	nOCVTable9	nFullCapRep	nNVCfg1	nADCCfg	nVChgCfg	nSerialNumber1
Ah	nXTable10	nOCVTable10	nVoltTemp	nNVCfg2	nThermCfg	nOVPrtTh	nSerialNumber2
Bh	nXTable11	nOCVTable11	nMaxMinCurr	nHibCfg	nChgCfg1	nStepChg	nDeviceName0
Ch	nVAlrtTh	nIChgTerm	nMaxMinVolt	nROMID0[2]	nManfctrName0	nDelayCfg	nDeviceName1
Dh	nTAlrtTh	nFilterCfg	nMaxMinTemp	nROMID1[2]	nManfctrName1	nODSCTh	nDeviceName2
Eh	nIAlrtTh	nVEmpty	nFaultLog	nROMID2[2]	nManfctrName2	nODSCCfg	nDeviceName3
Fh	nSAlrtTh	nLearnCfg	nTimerH	nROMID3[2]	nRSense	nProtCfg2	nDeviceName4

1. Locations 1A0h to 1AFh are updated automatically by the IC each time it learns.
2. The ROM ID is unique to each IC and cannot be changed by the user.

100 Record Life Logging

Addresses 0x1A0 to 0x1AF support 100 OTP entries of learned battery characteristics and other life logging if LOCK1 is unlocked. The save interval is managed automatically using a Fibonacci algorithm which provides the following benefits:

1. **Lifespan autopsy/debug data** to support analysis of any aged or returned battery.
    a. **Battery Characteristic Learning/Adaptation.** FullCap (nFullCapRep, nFullCapNom), empty-compensation (nQRTable00-30), resistance (nRComp0 and nTempCo)
    b. **Permanent Failure Information** (nBattStatus)
    c. **Battery Charge/Discharge Fractional Cycle Counter** (nCycles)
    d. **23 Year Timer** (nTimerH)
    e. **Log-Interval Max/Min Voltage/Current/Temperature** (nMaxMinCurr, nMaxMinVolt, nMaxMinTemp)
    f. **Voltage/Temperature** at logging moment (nVoltTemp)
2. **Intelligently managed save-intervals**:
    a. **Frequent when New**. When the battery is new, updates occur more frequently since early information learned

about the battery (such as full-capacity) is more critical for overall performance.

b. **Slower with Age.** As the battery matures, the update interval slows down since changes in learned information also progress slower.

c. **Faster Updates Following Power Loss**. This limits the loss of information associated with power loss. Each time the power is lost and this learned information is restored, the rate of the next save is accelerated as shown in Table 78. This is limited to seven reset accelerations. The reset counter is also recorded (see also *nCycles* register). Most battery applications can proceed for longer than one year without interruption in power.

d. **Limitation on Slowest Interval.** Beyond a certain cycle life, the update interval remains constant.

Configure this behavior according to the expected battery lifespan using the FibMax and FibScl parameters in nNVCfg2 as follows:

Table 76. Fibonacci Configuration Settings

		FIBONACCI SCALAR—FIBSCL			
Setting		**00**	**01**	**10**	**11**
1st and 2nd Interval		0.25	0.5	1	2
Battery Cycles Record Limit	FibMax = 0	193	386	**772**	1544
	FibMax = 1	**310.5**	**621**	**1242**	2484
	FibMax = 2	**496.5**	**993**	**1986**	3972
	FibMax = 3	**795.5**	**1591**	3182	6364
	FibMax = 4	**1273.25**	2546.5	5093	10186
	FibMax = 5	2038.75	4077.5	8155	16310
	FibMax = 6	3262	6524	13048	26096
	FibMax = 7	5220	10440	20880	41760

The **bold** settings in Table 76 are the generally recommended choices, depending on preference for update interval, slowest update rates, and lifespan.

Table 77 shows the slowest update intervals associated with each configuration.

Table 77. Eventual Matured Update Interval (in battery cycles)

		FIBONACCI SCALAR—NNVCFG2.FIBSCL			
Setting		00	01	10	11
1st and 2nd Interval		0.25	0.5	1	2
Slowest Update Interval	FibMax = 0	2	4	**8**	16
	FibMax = 1	**3.25**	**6.5**	**13**	26
	FibMax = 2	**5.25**	**10.5**	**21**	42
	FibMax = 3	**8.5**	**17**	34	68
	FibMax = 4	**13.75**	27.5	55	110
	FibMax = 5	22.25	44.5	89	178
	FibMax = 6	36	72	144	288
	FibMax = 7	58.25	116.5	233	466

Table 78 illustrates the saving schedule with the most preferred configurations.

Table 78. Saving Schedule Example with the Most Preferred Configurations

EXAMPLE	CYCLE LIFE	FIB MAX	FIB SCL	SLOWEST UPDATE	1ST	2ND	3RD	4TH	5TH	6TH	7TH	8TH	9TH	10TH	11TH
1	**310.5**	1	0	3.25	0.25	0.25	0.5	0.75	1.25	2	3.25	3.25	3.25	—	—
2	**386**	0	1	4	0.5	0.5	1	1.5	2.5	4	4	4	—	—	—

Table 78. Saving Schedule Example with the Most Preferred Configurations (continued)

3	**496.5**	2	0	5.25	0.25	0.25	0.5	0.75	1.25	2	3.25	5.25	5.25	5.25	—
4	**621**	1	1	6.5	0.5	0.5	1	1.5	2.5	4	6.5	6.5	6.5	—	—
5	**772**	0	2	8	1	1	2	3	5	8	8	8	—	—	—
6	**795.5**	3	0	8.5	0.25	0.25	0.5	0.75	1.25	2	3.25	5.25	8.5	8.5	—
7	**993**	2	1	10.5	0.5	0.5	1	1.5	2.5	4	6.5	10.5	10.5	10.5	—
8	**1242**	1	2	13	1	1	2	3	5	8	13	13	13	—	—
9	**1273.25**	4	0	13.75	0.25	0.25	0.5	0.75	1.25	2	3.25	5.25	8.5	13.75	13.75

As an example for all subsequent startups, for the configuration of example 9 from Table 78:

1st startup [0.25, 0.25, 0.5, 0.75, 1.25, 2, 3.25, 5.25, 8.5, 13.75, ...]

2nd startup [0.25, 0.5, 0.75, 1.25, 2, 3.25, 5.25, 8.5, 13.75, ...]

3rd startup [0.5, 0.75, 1.25, 2, 3.25, 5.25, 8.5, 13.75, ...]

4th startup [0.75, 1.25, 2, 3.25, 5.25, 8.5, 13.75, ...]

5th startup [1.25, 2, 3.25, 5.25, 8.5, 13.75, ...]

6th startup [2, 3.25, 5.25, 8.5, 13.75, ...]

7th startup [3.25, 5.25, 8.5, 13.75, ...]

8th startup [5.25, 8.5, 13.75, ...]

nNVCfg0 Register (1B8h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: There is no associated restore location for this register.

The nNVCfg0 register manages nonvolatile memory backup of device and fuel gauge register RAM locations. When set, each bit of the nNVCfg0 register enables a given register location to be restored from a corresponding nonvolatile memory location after reset of the IC. If nonvolatile restore of a given register is not enabled, that location initializes to a default value after reset instead. See the individual register descriptions for details. The factory default value for nNVCfg0 register is 0x0702. Table 79 shows the nNVCfg0 register format.

Table 79. nNVCfg0 Register (1B8h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
enOCV	enX	0	0	enCfg	enFCfg	enRCfg	enLCfg
D7	**D6**	**D5**	**D4**	**D3**	**D2**	**D1**	**D0**
enICT	enDP	0	enDC	enMC	enAF	0	enSBS

enSBS: Enable SBS. This bit enables SBS functions of the IC. When set, all registers accessed with the SBS 2-Wire address are regularly updated. When this bit is clear, all SBS related nonvolatile configuration register locations can be used as general purpose user memory.

enAF: Enable Age Forecasting. Set this bit to enable Age Forecasting functionality. When this bit is clear, nAgeFcCfg can be used for general purpose data storage. When set, nVoltTemp becomes repurposed for Age Forecasting data. When enAF is set to 1, nNVCfg2.enVT must be 0 for proper operation.

enMC: Enable MiscCfg restore. Set this bit to enable the MiscCfg register to be restored after reset by the nMiscCfg register. When this bit is clear, MiscCfg is restored with its alternate initialization value and nMiscCfg can be used for general purpose data storage.

enDC: Enable DesignCap restore. Set this bit to enable the DesignCap register to be restored after reset by the nDesignCap register. When this bit is clear, DesignCap is restored with its alternate initialization value and nDesignCap can be used for general purpose data storage.

enDP: Enable Dynamic Power. Set this bit to enable Dynamic Power calculations. When this bit is set to 0, Dynamic Power calculations are disabled and registers MaxPeakPower/SusPeakPower/MPPCurrent/SPPCurrent can be used as general purpose memory. If enDP is set, enVE also needs to be set and the nVEmpty value needs to be valid.

enICT: Enable IChgTerm restore. Set this bit to enable the IChgTerm register to be restored after reset by the nIChgTerm register. When this bit is clear, IChgTerm is restored to a value of 1/3 of the nFullCapNom register and nIChgTerm can be used for general purpose data storage.

enFCfg: Enable FilterCfg restore. Set this bit to enable the FilterCfg register to be restored after reset by the nFilterCfg register. When this bit is clear, FilterCfg is restored with its alternate initialization value and nFilterCfg can be used for general purpose data storage

enCfg: Enable Config and Config2 restore. Set this bit to enable the Config and Config2 registers to be restored after reset by the nConfig register. When this bit is clear, Config and Config2 are restored with their alternate initialization values and nConfig can be used for general purpose data storage.

enX: Enable XTable restore. Set this bit to enable the nXTable register locations to be used for cell characterization data. When this bit is clear, the IC uses the default cell model and all nXTable register locations can be used as general purpose user memory.

enOCV: Enable OCVTable restore. Set this bit to enable nOCVTable register locations to be used for cell characterization data. When this bit is clear, the IC uses the default cell model and all nOCVTable register locations can be used as general purpose user memory.

enLCfg: Enable LearnCfg restore. Set this bit to enable the LearnCfg register to be restored after reset by the nLearnCfg register. When this bit is clear, LearnCfg is restored with its alternate initialization value and nLearnCfg can be used for general purpose data storage.

enRCfg: Enable RelaxCfg restore. Set this bit to enable the RelaxCfg register to be restored after reset by the nRelaxCfg register. When this bit is clear, RelaxCfg is restored with its alternate initialization value and nRelaxCfg can be used for general purpose data storage.

0: Set to 0. Do not set to 1.

nNVCfg1 Register (1B9h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: There is no associated restore location for this register.

The nNVCfg1 register manages the nonvolatile memory restore of the device and fuel gauge register RAM locations. When set, each bit of the nNVCfg1 register enables a given register location to be restored from a corresponding nonvolatile memory location after reset of the IC. If nonvolatile backup of a given register is not enabled, that location initializes to a default value after reset instead. See the individual register descriptions for details. Table 80 shows the nNVCfg1 register format.

Table 80. nNVCfg1 Register (1B9h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
0	enMtl	enFTh	enRF	enODSC	enJP	enSC	enProt
D7	**D6**	**D5**	**D4**	**D3**	**D2**	**D1**	**D0**
enJ	enProtChksm	enTP	enTTF	enAT		enCTE	enDS

enJ: Enable ChargingCurrent and ChargingVoltage. Set this bit to 1 to enable ChargingCurrent and ChargingVoltage update feature.

enJP: Enable Protection with JEITA (temperature region dependent). Set this bit to 1 to enable JEITA Protection. Clear this bit to disable JEITA protection and make the OVP and OCCP thresholds become flat.

enSC: Enable special chemistry model. Set this bit to 1 if a special chemistry model is used. This bit enables the use of nScOcvLim.

enCTE: Enable Converge-to-Empty. Set this bit to enable the nConvgCfg register settings to affect the converge-to-empty functionality of the IC. When this bit is clear, converge-to-empty is disabled and nConvgCfg can be used for general purpose data storage.

enAT: Enable Alert Thresholds. Set this bit to enable IAlrtTh, VAlrtTh, TAlrtTh, and SAlrtTh registers to be restored after reset by the nIAlrtTh, nVAlrtTh, nTAlrtTh, and nSAlrtTh registers respectively. When this bit is clear, these registers are restored with their alternate initialization values and the nonvolatile locations can be used for general purpose data storage.

enTTF: Enable time-to-full configuration. Set to 1 to enable nTTFCfg (configures CVMixCap and CVHalftime) to tune Time-to-Full performance. Otherwise, CVMixCap and CVHalftime are restored to their alternate initialization values and nTTFCfg can be used for general purpose data storage.

enODSC: Enable OD and SC over-current comparators. Set this bit to enable the ODSCTh and ODSCCfg registers to be restored after reset by the nODSCTh and nODSCCfg registers. When this bit is clear, ODSCTh and ODSCCfg are restored with their alternate initialization values (comparators disabled) and nODSCTh and nODSCCfg can be used for general purpose data storage.

enRF: Enable RFast. Set this bit to enable the RFast register to be restored after reset by the nRFast register. When this bit is clear, RFast is restored with its alternate initialization values and nRFast can be used for general purpose data storage.

enFTh: Enable FullSOCThr configuration restore. Set this bit to enable FullSOCThr register to be restored after reset by the nFullSOCThr register. When this bit is clear, FullSOCThr is restored with its alternate initialization value and nFullSOCThr can be used for general purpose data storage.

enMtl: Enable CGTempCo restore. Set this bit to enable the CGTempCo register to be restored after reset by the nADCCfg/nCGTempCo register. When this bit is clear, CGTempCo is restored with its alternate initialization value. nADCCfg can be used for general purpose data storage if both Config.FastADCen and enMtl are clear. Do not set both Config.FastADCen and enMtl at the same time.

enTP: Set to 1 to associate the TaskPeriod register with nTaskPeriod MTP. Otherwise, TaskPeriod restores with the POR value and the register's address configures nRippleCfg instead of nTaskPeriod.

enDS: Set to 0. Don't set to 1.

enProt: Enable Protector. Set this bit to enable the protector. When this bit is clear, the protector is disabled.

enProtChksm: Enable the protector checksum function. Set this bit to enable the protector checksum function. When this bit is clear, the checksum protection is disabled.

0: This location must remain 0. Do not write this location to 1.

nNVCfg2 Register (1BAh)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: There is no associated restore location for this register.

The nNVCfg2 register manages nonvolatile memory backup, restore of device, and fuel gauge register RAM locations. When set, each bit of the nNVCfg2 register enables a given register location to be restored from or backed up to a corresponding nonvolatile memory location after reset of the IC. If nonvolatile backup of a given register is not enabled, that location initializes to a default value after reset instead. See the individual register descriptions for details. Table 81 shows the nNVCfg2 register format.

Table 81. nNVCfg2 Register (1BAh) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
enT	0	enMMT	enMMV	enMMC	enVT	enFC		enMet			FibMax			FibScl	

FibMax/FibScl. Set the FibMax and FibScl "Fibonacci Saving" interval to provide recurring log-saving according to the expected battery lifespan. See the *100 Record Life Logging* section for more details.

enMet: Enable metal current sensing. Setting this bit to 1 enables temperature compensation of current readings to allow copper trace current sensing. This also forces the PackCfg.TdEn bit to 1 after reset of the IC to guarantee that internal temperature measurements occur. See nNVCfg1.enMtl, which enables nCGTempCo/nADCCfg register operation for adjustment of the current sensing temperature coefficient.

enFC: Enable FullCap and FullCapRep backup and restore. Set this bit to enable FullCap and FullCapRep registers to be restored after reset by the nFullCapRep register and FullCapRep to backup to nFullCapRep. When this bit is clear, FullCap and FullCapRep registers restore from the nFullCapNom register. nFullCapRep can then be used as general purpose user memory.

enVT: Enable Voltage and Temperature backup. Set this bit to enable storage of AvgVCell and AvgTA register information into the nVoltTemp register during save operations. There is no corresponding restore option. When this bit and nNVCfg0.enAF are clear, nVoltTemp can be used as general purpose memory. Note that enVT should not be set simultaneously with nNVCfg0.enAF (AgeForecasting).

enMMC: Enable MinMaxCurr Backup. Set this bit to enable storage of MinMaxCurr register information into the nMinMaxCurr register during save operations. There is no corresponding restore option. When this bit is clear, nMinMaxCurr can be used as general purpose memory.

enMMV: Enable MinMaxVolt Backup. Set this bit to enable storage of MinMaxVolt register information into the nMinMaxVolt register during save operations. There is no corresponding restore option. When this bit is clear, nMinMaxVolt can be used as general purpose memory.

enMMT: Enable MinMaxTemp Backup. Set this bit to enable storage of MinMaxTemp register information into the nMinMaxTemp register during save operations. There is no corresponding restore option. When this bit is clear, nMinMaxTemp can be used as general purpose memory.

enT: Enable TimerH backup and restore. Set this bit to enable TimerH register to be backed up and restored by the nTimerH register. When this bit is clear, TimerH restores with its alternate initialization value and nTimerH can be used as general purpose memory.

Enabling and Freeing Nonvolatile vs. Defaults

There are seven nonvolatile memory words labeled nUser that are dedicated to general purpose user data storage. Most other nonvolatile memory locations can also be used as general purpose storage if their normal function is disabled. The nNVCfg0, nNVCfg1, and nNVCfg2 registers control which nonvolatile memory functions are enabled and disabled. Table 82 shows how to free up the specific registers for user data storage. Table 83 shows which nNVCfg bits control different IC functions and the effects when the bit is set or cleared. See the nNVCfg register descriptions for complete details. Do not convert a nonvolatile register to general purpose memory space if that register's function is used by the application.

Below is a summary of how many bytes can be made available for user memory and the functional trade off to free up those bytes.

- **154 bytes maximum freeable:** The tradeoff is any optional features/configuration, including no custom OCV table and protector disabled.
- **72 bytes reasonably freeable:** Made available without reverting halfway to EZ or disabling protector.
- **60 bytes freeable:** Made available by using half of miscellaneous configurability.
- **40 bytes easily freeable**
- **32 bytes always free:** If SBS mode is not enabled.
- **4 bytes always free:** If SBS enabled is enabled.

Table 82. Making Nonvolatile Memory Available for User Data

	RELATED FEATURE	FREE BY:	BYTES	REGISTERS	ADDRESS	COMMENTS
MAJOR FEATURE CHOICES	SBS NVM	Disable SBS features nNVCfg0.enSBS = 0 nNVCfg1.enDS = 0	14 words 28 bytes	nManfctrName[0:2] nDesignVoltage* nManfctrDate nFirstUsed nSerialNumber[0:2] nDeviceName[0:4]	0x1CC-0x1CE, 0x1E3*, 0x1E8-0x1EF	Generally freeable *nDesignVoltage is freeable if enSBS = 0 AND enDP = 0
	Time-to-Full Configurability	nNVCfg1.enTTF = 0	1 word 2 bytes	nTTFCfg	0x1C7	Free if default nTTFCfg is acceptable.

Table 82. Making Nonvolatile Memory Available for User Data (continued)

	Dynamic Power	nNVCfg0.enDP = 0	1 word 2 bytes	nDesignVoltage	0x1E3	Free if feature is not used. *nDesignVoltage is freeable if enSBS = 0 AND enDP = 0
	Age Forecasting	nNVCfg0.enAF = 0	1 word 2 bytes	nAgeFcCfg	0x1E2	Free if feature is not used. Has additional implications with nVoltTemp.
	$LiFePO_4$	nNVCfg1.enSC	1 word 2 bytes	nScOcvLim	0x1E1	Free if feature is not used.
	JEITA Charge Voltage/ Current vs. Temp	nNVCfg0.enJ = 0 nNVCfg0.enJP = 0	2 words 4 bytes	nIChgCfg nStepChg	0x1D8 0x1DB	Free if feature is not used. Note that nNCfg and nOVPrtTh are still required for protector functionality.
MODELLING/ CHARACTER-IZATION CONFIGURATION OPTIONS	Design Cap + FullCapRep	nNVCfg0.enDC = 0	1 word 2 bytes	nDesignCap (else nFullCapRep)	0x1B3	Freeable when original full-capacity isn't required to be remembered as FullCapRep ages.
	Relaxation Configuration	nNVCfg0.enRCfg = 0	6 words 12 bytes	nRelaxCfg	0x1B6	Normally freeable. Defaults work for most applications.
	Misc Configuration	nNVCfg0.enMC = 0		nMiscCfg	0x1B2	
	Converge-to-Empty Non-Default Configuration	nNVCfg1.enCTE		nConvgCfg	0x1B7	
	Full Detection % Threshold	nNVCfg1.enFTh		nFullSOCTh	0x1C6	
	RFast	nNVCfg1.enRFVSH		nRFast	0x1E5	
	Filter Configuration	nNVCfg0.enFC = 0		nFilterCfg	0x19D	
	nLearnCfg	nNVCfg0.en = 0	1 word 2 bytes	nLearnCfg	0x19F	Freeable depending on modelling/ characterization.
	Misc Configuration (Pushbutton, Comm-Shutdown, AtRate-enable	nNVCfg0.enCfg = 0	1 word 2 bytes	nConfig	0x1B0	Needed only for: Pushbutton feature, temp-alerts, 1% alerts, AtRate, and comm-shutdown.
	Empty Voltage	nNVCfg0.enVE = 0	1 word 2 bytes	nVEmpty	0x19E	Free if targeting the fuel gauge to default 3.3V empty voltage.
	Charge Termination	nNVCfg0.enICT = 0	1 word 2 bytes	nIChgTerm	0x19C	With custom models/ characterization, this is not freeable.

Table 82. Making Nonvolatile Memory Available for User Data (continued)

	SOC Table	Use m5 EZ model by setting nNVCfg.enOCV = 0 nNVCfg.enX = 0	12 words 24 bytes	nXTable[0:11]	0x180-0x18B	
	OCV Table		12 words 24 bytes	nCVTable[0:11]	0x190-0x19B	
OTHER	Alert Startup Configuration	nNVCfg1.enAT = 0	4 words 8 bytes	nVAlrtTh nTAlrtTh nIAlrtTh nSAlrtTh	0x18C-0x18F	
	Protector NVM Checksum	nNVCfg1 .enProtChkSm = 0	1 word 2 bytes	nCheckSum	0x1DF	
	Protector	nNVCfg1.enProt = 0 nNVCfg1.enJP = 0	16 words 32 bytes	nVPrtTh1, nTPrtTh1 nTPrtTh3, nIPrtTh1 nVPrtTh2, nTPrtTh2 nProtMisTh nProtCfg, nVChgCfg nOVPrtTh, nDelayCfg nODSCTh, nODSCCfg nCheckSum (below if JEITA also off) nIChgCfg, nStepChg	0x1D0-0x1DF	Most applications of MAX17330 use the protector. However, if the protector is entirely disabled, these 32 bytes become free NVM. FET drivers and protection do not execute in this configuration.

Table 83. Nonvolatile Memory Configuration Options

ADDRESS	REGISTER NAME	FACTORY DEFAULT	CONTROL BIT(S)	FUNCTION WHEN CONTROL BIT IS SET	FUNCTION WHEN CONTROL BIT(S) CLEARED
180h - 18Bh	nXTable0 through nXTable12	All 0x0000	nNVCfg0.enX	180h-18Bh Hold Custom Cell Model Information	Becomes Free[1], IC Uses Default EZ Cell Model
18Ch	nVAlrtTh	0x0000	nNVCfg1.enAT	VAlrtTh, TAlrtTh, IAlrtTh, SAlrtTh initialize from nVAlrtTh, nTAlrtTh, nIAlrtTh, nSAlrtTh	Becomes Free[1], VAlrtTh, TAlrtTh, IAlrtTh, SAlrtTh → Disabled Threshold Values
18Dh	nTAlrtTh	0x0000			
18Eh	nIAlrtTh	0x0000			
18Fh	nSAlrtTh	0x0000			
190h - 19Bh	nOCVTable0 through nOCVTable12	All 0x0000	nNVCfg0.enOCV	190h-19Bh Hold Custom Cell Model Information	Becomes Free[1], IC Uses Default EZ Cell Model
19Ch	nIChgTerm	0x0000	nNVCfg0.enICT	nIChgTerm→ IChgTerm	Becomes Free[1], IChgTerm = FullCapRep/3
19Dh	nFilterCfg	0x0000	nNVCfg0.enFCfg	nFilterCfg→ FilterCfg	Becomes Free[1], FilterCfg = 0x0EA4
19Eh	nVEmpty	0xA561	N/A	nVEmpty must be set to the empty voltage and recovery voltage of the battery.	

Table 83. Nonvolatile Memory Configuration Options (continued)

ADDRESS	REGISTER NAME	FACTORY DEFAULT	CONTROL BIT(S)	FUNCTION WHEN CONTROL BIT IS SET	FUNCTION WHEN CONTROL BIT(S) CLEARED
19Fh	nLearnCfg	0x0000	nNVCfg0.enLCfg	nLearnCfg → LearnCfg	Becomes Free[1], LearnCfg = 0x2687
1A0h	nQRTable00	0x1080	N/A	Always QRTable Information	
1A1h	nQRTable10	0x2043		nQRTable00→ QRTable00	
1A2h	nQRTable20	0x078C		nQRTable10→ QRTable10	
1A3h	nQRTable30	0x0880		nQRTable20→ QRTable20 nQRTable30→ QRTable30	
1A4h	nCycles	0x0000		Always nCycles→ Cycles	
1A5h	nFullCapNom	0x0D48		Always nFullCapNom→ FullCapNom	
1A6h	nRComp0	0x08CC		Always nRComp0→ RComp0	
1A7h	nTempCo	0x223E		Always nTempCo→ TempCo	
1A8h	nBattStatus	0x0000	nNVCfg1.enProt nProtCfg.PFen	Logs/Saves Permanent Failure Status	Becomes Free[1]
1A9h	nFullCapRep	0x0D48	nNVCfg2.enFC	nFullCapRep→ FullCapRep	Becomes Free[1] nFullCapNom→ FullCapRep
1AAh	nVoltTemp	0x0000	nNVCfg2.enVT (nNVCfg0.enAF = 0)	AvgVCell→ nVoltTemp and AvgTA→ nVoltTemp at each backup event	Becomes Free[1], Voltage, Temperature Logging Disabled
			nNVCfg0.enAF (nNVCfg2.enVT = 0)	nVoltTemp stores Age Forecasting Information	Becomes Free[1], Age Forecasting Disabled
1ABh	nMaxMinCurr	0x0000	nNVCfg2.enMMC	MaxMinCurr→ nMaxMinCurr at each backup event	Becomes Free[1]
1ACh	nMaxMinVolt	0x0000	nNVCfg2.enMMV	MaxMinVolt→ nMaxMinVolt at each backup event	Becomes Free[1]
1ADh	nMaxMinTemp	0x0000	nNVCfg2.enMMT	MaxMinTemp→ nMaxMinTemp at each backup event	Becomes Free[1]
1AEh	nFaultLog	0x0000	nNVCfg2.enFL	nFaultLog stores the history of all protection events tha happened in this save segment	Becomes Free[1], Fault logging disabled Disabled
1AFh	nTimerH	0x0000	nNVCfg2.enT	TimerH→ nTimerH at each backup event	Becomes Free[1]
1B0h	nConfig	0x0000	nNVCfg0.enCfg	nConfig→ Config nConfig→ Config2	Becomes Free[1], Config = 0x2214, Config2 = 0x2058
1B1h	nRippleCfg	0x0204	N/A	Always nRippleCfg→ RippleCfg	
1B2h	nMiscCfg	0x0000	nNVCfg0.enMC	nMiscCfg→ MiscCfg	Becomes Free[1], MiscCfg = 0x3870
1B3h	nDesignCap	0x0000	nNVCfg0.enDC	nDesignCap→ DesignCap	Become Free[1], FullCapRep→ DesignCap
1B4h	nI2CCfg	0x0000	N/A	Always nI2CCfg	
1B5h	nPackCfg	0x1000	N/A	Always nPackCfg	
1B6h	nRelaxCfg	0x0839	nNVCfg0.enRCfg	nRelaxCfg→ RelaxCfg	Becomes Free[1], RelaxCfg = 0x2039,

Table 83. Nonvolatile Memory Configuration Options (continued)

ADDRESS	REGISTER NAME	FACTORY DEFAULT	CONTROL BIT(S)	FUNCTION WHEN CONTROL BIT IS SET	FUNCTION WHEN CONTROL BIT(S) CLEARED
1B7h	nConvgCfg	0x2241	nNVCfg1.enCTE	Converge-to-Empty Enabled	Becomes Free[1], Converge-to-Empty Disabled
1B8h	nNVCfg0	0x0200	N/A	Always Required Nonvolatile Memory Control Registers	
1B9h	nNVCfg1	0x0182			
1BAh	nNVCfg2	0xFE0A			
1BBh	nHibCfg	0x0909	nHibCfg always applies, not optional		
1BCh	nROMID0	Varies	N/A	Always the Unique 64-bit ID	
1BDh	nROMID1	Varies			
1BEh	nROMID2	Varies			
1BFh	nROMID3	Varies			
1C0h	nChgCtrl1	0x015A	N/A	**Do Not Modify** without Special Guidance from Maxim Integrated	
1C1h	nReserved1	0x0000			
1C2h	nChgCfg0	0x40C1			
1C3h	nChgCtrl0	0x08C2			
1C4h	nRGain	0x0000	nNVCfg0.enDP	Used for Dynamic Power	Becomes Free[1], Dynamic Power Disabled
1C5h	nPackResistance	0x0000			
1C6h	nFullSOCThr	0x0000	nNVCfg1.enFTh	nFullSOCThr→ FullSOCThr	Becomes Free[1], FullSOCThr = 0x5005
1C7h	nTTFCfg	0x0000	nNVCfg1.enTTF	nTTFCfg Configures Time-to-Full Calculation	Becomes Free[1], Time-to-Full Default Configuration
1C8h	nCGain	0x4000	N/A	Trim for Calibrating Current-Sense Gain	
1C9h	nCGTempCo/ nADCCfg	0x5188	nNVCfg1.enMtl (nNVCfg2.enMet = 1) (nNVCfg1.enADCcfg = 0)	Metal Current Sense TempCo Configurable Custom ADCCfg doesn't apply	Becomes Free[1], Metal Current Sense TempCo Enabled, CGTempCo = 0x20C8
			nNVCfg1.enCrv (nNVCfg2.enMet = 0)(nNVCfg1.enADCcfg = 1)	Custom ADCCfg	Becomes Free[1], ADC configuration defaulted
1CAh	nThermCfg	0x71E8	N/A	Configuration for Translating Thermistor to ºC	
1CBh	nChgCfg1	0x1E3F	N/A	Always nChgCfg1	
1CCh	nManfctrName0	0x0000	nNVCfg0.enSBS	nManfctrName[2:0]→ sManfctrName	Becomes Free[1]
1CDh	nManfctrName1	0x0000			
1CEh	nManfctrName2	0x0000			
1CFh	nRSense	0x03E8	N/A	Sense Resistor Value—Helps Host Translate Currents and Capacities	
1D0h	nUVPrtTh	0x508C	nNVCfg1.enProt	Configures Protection Thresholds	Becomes Free[1] Protector Disabled
1D1h	nTPrtTh1	0x3700			
1D2h	nTPrtTh3	0x5528			
1D3h	nIPrtTh1	0x4BB5			

Table 83. Nonvolatile Memory Configuration Options (continued)

ADDRESS	REGISTER NAME	FACTORY DEFAULT	CONTROL BIT(S)	FUNCTION WHEN CONTROL BIT IS SET	FUNCTION WHEN CONTROL BIT(S) CLEARED
1D4h	nVPrtTh2	0x0000			
1D5h	nTPrtTh2	0x2D0A			
1D6h	nProtMiscTh	0x7A58			
1D7h	nProtCfg	0x2800			
1D8h	nIChgCfg	0x7F4B			
1D9h	nVChgCfg	0x0059			
1DAh	nOVPrtTh	0xB354			
1DBh	nStepChg	0xC884			
1DCh	nDelayCfg	0xAB3D			
1DDh	nODSCTh	0x0EAF			
1DEh	nODSCCfg	0x4355			
1DFh	nProtCfg2	0x1006	nNVCfg1.{enProtChkSm and enProt}	Holds CheckSum Value of 0x1A0-0x1AE for Validating NVM at Startup	Becomes Free[1]
1E0h	User Memory	0x0000	N/A	Always Free	
1E1h	nScOcvLim	0x0000	nNVCfg1.enSC	Used for $LiFePO_4$ Gauging	Becomes Free[1] $LiFePO_4$ Disabled
1E2h	nAgeFcCfg	0x0000	nNVCfg0.enAF	Configures Age Forecast	Becomes Free[1]
1E3h	nDesignVoltage	0x0000	nNVCfg0.enSBS nNVCfg0.enDP	nDesignVoltage→ sDesignVolt/ MinSysVoltage	Becomes Free[1]
1E4h	nMiscCfg2	0x0000	N/A	Always nMiscCfg2	
1E5h	nReserved	0x0000	N/A	Reserved	
1E6h	nManfctrDate	0x0000	nNVCfg0.enSBS	nManfctrDate→ sManfctrDate	Becomes Free[1]
1E7h	nFirstUsed	0x0000		nFirstUsed→ sFirstUsed	Becomes Free[1]
1E8h	nSerialNumber0	0x0000		nSerialNumber[2:0]→ sSerialNumber	Becomes Free[1]
1E9h	nSerialNumber1	0x0000			
1EAh	nSerialNumber2	0x0000			
1EBh	nDeviceName0	0x0000		nDeviceName[4:0]→ sDeviceName	Becomes Free[1]
1ECh	nDeviceName1	0x0000			
1EDh	nDeviceName2	0x0000			
1EEh	nDeviceName3	0x0000			
1EFh	nDeviceName4	0x0000			

Note: "Free" Indicates the address is unused and available as general user nonvolatile.

Shadow RAM

Nonvolatile memory is never written to or read from directly by the communication interface. Instead, data is written to or read from shadow RAM located at the same address. Copy and recall commands are used to transfer data between the nonvolatile memory and the shadow RAM. Figure 26 describes this relationship. Nonvolatile memory recall occurs automatically at IC power-up and software POR.

Shadow RAM and Nonvolatile Memory Relationship

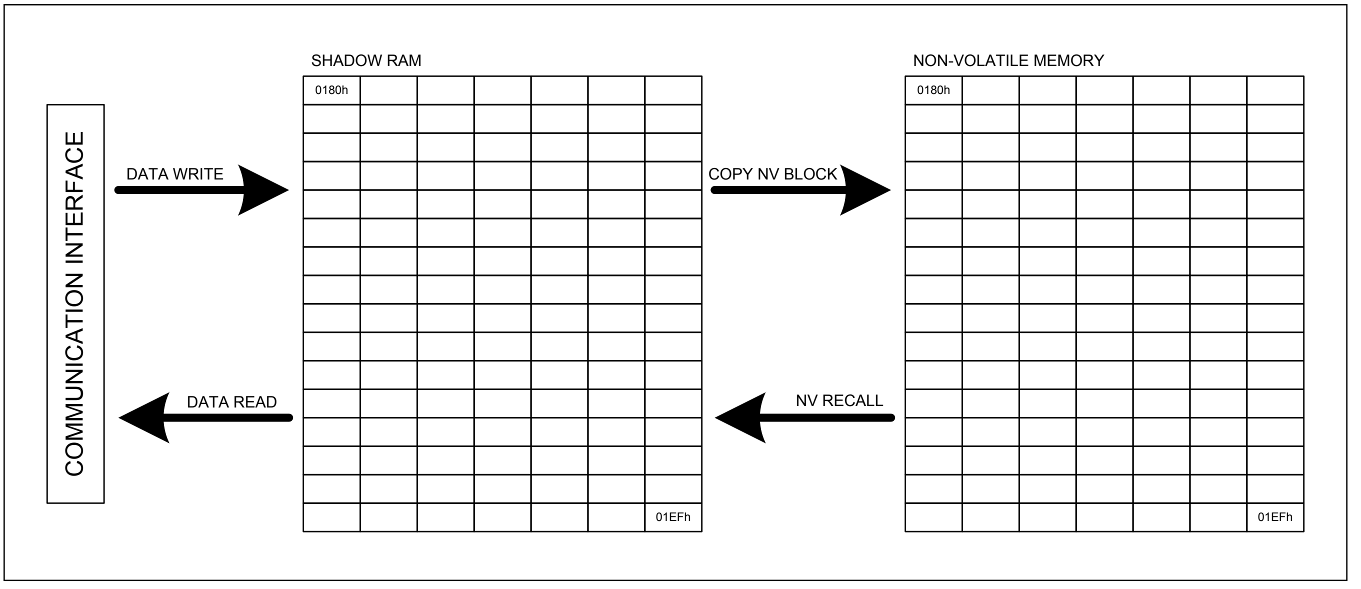


Figure 26. Shadow RAM and Nonvolatile Memory Relationship

Nonvolatile Memory Commands

The following commands are used to copy or recall data from the nonvolatile memory. All commands are written to the Command register at memory address 060h to perform the desired operation. The CommStat register can be used to track the status of the request.

COPY NV BLOCK [E904h]

This command copies the entire block from shadow RAM to nonvolatile memory addresses 180h to 1EFh excluding the unique ID locations of 1BCh to 1BFh. After issuing this command, the host must wait t_{BLOCK} for the operation to complete. The configuration memory can be copied a maximum of seven times. Note that the supply voltage must be above V_{NVM} for the operation to complete successfully.

NV RECALL [E001h]

This command recalls the entire block from nonvolatile memory to Shadow RAM addresses 180h to 1EFh. This is a low-power operation that takes up to t_{RECALL} to complete. Note that the supply voltage must be above VNVM for the operation to complete successfully.

HISTORY RECALL [E2XXh]

This command copies history data into page 1Fh of memory. After issuing this command, the host must wait t_{RECALL} for the operation to complete before reading page 1Fh. Table 84 shows what history information can be recalled. See the *SHA-256*, *Battery Life Logging*, and *Determining Number of Remaining Updates* sections for details on how to decode this information.

Table 84. History Recall Command Functions

COMMAND	FUNCTION
0xE29D	Recall indicator flags to determine remaining SHA-256 secret updates or clears
0xE29B	Recall indicator flags to determine remaining configuration memory writes
0xE29C	Recall indicator flags to determine remaining Battery Life Logging updates
0xE29C, 0xE29D	Recall indicator flags to determine Battery Life Logging update errors
0xE22E to 0xE291	Recall Battery Life Logging information

Nonvolatile Block Programming

The host must program all nonvolatile memory locations at the same time by using the Copy NV Block command. The host first writes all desired nonvolatile memory shadow RAM locations to their desired values, sends the Copy NV Block command, and then waits tBLOCK for the copy to complete. Afterwards, the host sends the power-on-reset sequence to reset the IC and the new nonvolatile settings take effect. The CommStat.NVError bit should be read to determine if the copy command executed successfully. Note that configuration memory is limited to nBLOCK total write attempts. The recommended full sequence is:

1. Write 0x0000 to the CommStat register (0x061) 2 times in a row to unlock Write Protection.
2. Write and Verify the desired memory locations to new values.
3. Write 0x0000 to the CommStat register (0x061) to clear CommStat.NVError bit.
4. Write 0xE904 to the Command register 0x060 to initiate a block copy.
5. Wait tBLOCK for the copy to complete.
6. Check the CommStat.NVBusy bit. Continue to wait while CommStat.NVBusy = 1.
7. Check the CommStat.NVError bit. If set, return to Step 2 to repeat the process. If clear, continue.
8. Write 0x000F to the Command register 0x060 to POR the IC.
9. Wait 10ms.
10. Verify all of the nonvolatile memory locations are recalled correctly.
11. Write 0x0000 to the CommStat register (0x061) 3 times in a row to unlock Write Protection and clear NVError bit.
12. Write 0x8000 to Config2 register 0x0AB to reset firmware.
13. Wait for POR_CMD bit (bit 15) of the Config2 register to be cleared to indicate POR sequence is complete.
14. Write 0x00F9 to the CommStat register (0x061) 2 times in a row to lock Write Protection.

To only update the Shadow RAM without copying the values to NVM, the recommended sequence is:

1. Write 0x0000 to the CommStat register (0x061) 2 times in a row to unlock Write Protection.
2. Write and Verify the desired memory locations to new values.
3. Write 0x8000 to Config2 register 0x0AB to reset firmware.
4. Wait for POR_CMD bit (bit 15) of the Config2 register to be cleared to indicate POR sequence is complete.
5. Write 0x00F9 to the CommStat register (0x061) 2 times in a row to lock Write Protection.

Determining Number of Remaining Updates

The configuration memory can only be updated seven times by the user (first update occurs during manufacturing test). The number of remaining updates can be calculated using the following procedure:

1. Write 0xE29B to the Command register (060h).
2. Wait t_{RECALL}.
3. Read memory address 1FDh.
4. Decode address 1FDh data as shown in Table 85. Each block write has redundant indicator flags for reliability. Logically OR the upper and lower bytes together, then count the number of 1s determine how many updates have already been used. The first update occurs in manufacturing test prior to shipping to the user.

Table 85. Number of Remaining Config Memory Updates

ADDRESS 1FDH DATA	LOGICAL OR OF UPPER AND LOWER BYTES	NUMBER OF UPDATES USED	NUMBER OF UPDATES REMAINING
0000000x00000001b or 000000010000000xb	00000001b	1	7

Table 85. Number of Remaining Config Memory Updates (continued)

ADDRESS 1FDH DATA	LOGICAL OR OF UPPER AND LOWER BYTES	NUMBER OF UPDATES USED	NUMBER OF UPDATES REMAINING
000000xx0000001xb or 0000001x000000xxb	00000011b	2	6
00000xxx000001xxb or 000001xx00000xxxb	00000111b	3	5
0000xxxx00001xxxb or 00001xxx0000xxxxb	00001111b	4	4
000xxxxx0001xxxxb or 0001xxxx000xxxxxb	00011111b	5	3
00xxxxxx001xxxxxb or 001xxxxx00xxxxxxb	00111111b	6	2
0xxxxxxx01xxxxxxb or 01xxxxxx0xxxxxxxb	01111111b	7	1
xxxxxxxx1xxxxxxxb or 1xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxb	11111111b	8	0

Memory Locks and Write Protection

ModelGauge m5 EZ RAM Registers and all nonvolatile memory locations can be write protected or permanently locked to prevent accidental overwriting or data loss in the application. Write protecting or locking a memory block only prevents future writes to the locations. Reading locked locations is still allowed. The IC has write protection enabled by default and must be disabled (as described in *CommStat Register*) before any registers can be written. **Note that locking a memory location is permanent so carefully choose all desired locks before sending the NV LOCK command.**

The SHA secret is stored in a separate secure non-readable memory. There is a different command for locking the SHA secret and its state is not displayed in the Lock register. See the *SHA-256 Authentication* section for details. Once a lock bit is set, it can never be cleared. Table 72 shows which lock bits correspond to which memory blocks of the IC.

CommStat Register (061h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The CommStat register tracks the progress and error state of any command sent to the Command register. It also provides the write protection control and status of each page of registers. Table 86 shows the register format.

Table 86. CommStat Register (061h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
X	X	X	X	X	X	DISOff	CHGOff	WP5	WP4	WP3	WP2	WP1	NVError	NVBusy	WPGlobal

X: Don't Care. This bit is undefined and can be logic 0 or 1.

Write Protection: To prevent the host from accidentally writing any registers of the IC, write protection is enabled by default. Any time the host wants to write a register, the global write protection must be disabled as well as the write protection for the specific register page. To prevent accidental unlocking of the write protection, the CommStat register must be written with the desired value two times in a row (without accessing any other registers) to set or clear any of the write protection bits. All bits can be set or cleared in the same write sequence. For example, writing 0x0000 to CommStat twice in a row clears the WPGlobal and all WP1-WP5 at the same time.

WPGlobal: Write Protection Global Enable. Set to 1 to write protect all register pages. Clear to 0 to allow individual write protect bits (WP1–WP5) to be disabled.

WP1–WP5: Write Protection Enable Bits. Set any bit to 1 to write protect the following specified pages. Clear any bit to 0 to allow pages to be writable. To update any of these bits, the WPGlobal bit must be 0.

WP1: Write protects register pages 1Ah, 1Bh, 1Eh

WP2: Write protects register pages 01h, 02h, 03h, 04h, 0Bh, 0Dh

WP3: Write protects register pages 18h, 19h

WP4: Write protects register pages 1Ch

WP5: Write protects register pages 1Dh

DISOff: Set this bit to 1 to forcefully turn off DIS FET (ignoring all other conditions) if nProtCfg.CmOvrdEn is enabled. DIS FET remains off as long as this bit stays to 1. Clear to 0 for normal operation. Write Protection must be disabled before writing to the DISOff bit.

CHGOff: Set this bit to 1 to forcefully turn off CHG FET (ignoring all other conditions) if nProtCfg.CmOvrdEn is enabled. CHG FET remains off as long as this bit stays set to 1. Clear to 0 for normal operation. Write Protection must be disabled before writing to the CHGOff bit.

NVBusy: This read only bit tracks if nonvolatile memory is busy or idle. NVBusy defaults to 0 after reset indicating nonvolatile memory is idle. This bit sets after a nonvolatile related command is sent to the command register and clears automatically after the operation completes.

NVError: This bit indicates the results of the previous SHA-256 or nonvolatile memory related command sent to the command register. This bit sets if there was an error executing the command or if the Full Reset command is executed. Once set, the bit must be cleared by system software in order to detect the next error. Write Protection must be disabled before the NVError bit can be cleared by the host.

NV LOCK [6AXXh]

This command permanently locks a block or blocks of memory. To set a lock, send 6AXXh to the Command register where the lower 5 bits of the command determine which locks are set. Table 87 shows a detailed format of the NV LOCK command. Set each individual LOCK bit to 1 to lock the corresponding register block. Set the LOCK bit to 0 to do nothing at this time. For example, writing 6A02h to the Command register sets LOCK2. Writing 6A1Fh sets all five locks. Writing 6A00h does not set any locks.

Table 87. Format of LOCK Command

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
0	1	1	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	LOCK 5	LOCK 4	LOCK 3	LOCK 2	LOCK 1

LOCK1: Locks register pages 1Ah, 1Bh, 1Eh (Locking disables History Life Logging)

LOCK2: Locks register pages 01h, 02h, 03h, 04h, 0Bh, 0Dh

LOCK3: Locks register pages 18h, 19h

LOCK4: Locks register pages 1Ch

LOCK5: Locks register pages 1Dh

Locking Memory Blocks

Prior to sending the lock command, the CommStat.NVError bit should be cleared; after the command is sent, the CommStat.NVError bit should be read to determine if the lock command executed successfully. Note that locking memory blocks is a permanent operation. The recommended full sequence is:

1. Write 0x0000 to the CommStat register (0x61) two times in a row to unlock write protection.

2. Write 0x0000 to the CommStat register (0x61) one more time to clear CommStat.NVError bit.
3. Write 0x6AXX to the Command register 0x060 to lock desired blocks.
4. Wait t_{UPDATE} for the copy to complete.
5. Check the CommStat.NVError bit. If set, repeat the process.
6. Write 0x00F9 to the CommStat register (0x61) two times in a row to lock write protection.

Reading Lock State

The Lock register at address 07Fh reports the state of each lock. See Table 88 for the format of the Lock register. If a LOCK bit is set, the corresponding memory block is locked. If the LOCK bit is cleared, the corresponding memory block is unlocked. Note that the SHA-256 secret lock state cannot be read through this register.

Table 88. Format of Lock Register (07Fh)

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	LOCK 5	LOCK 4	LOCK 3	LOCK 2	LOCK 1

X: Don't Care

1: LOCK is set

0: LOCK is clear

Analog Measurements

The MAX17330 monitors cell pack voltage, cell pack current, cell pack temperature, and the voltage of the cell. This information is provided to the fuel-gauge algorithm to predict cell capacity and trigger protection FETs in case of fault conditions and is also made available to the user. Note that ADC-related register information is not maintained while the IC is in shutdown mode. The following register information is invalid until the first measurement cycle after the IC returns to active mode of operation.

Voltage Measurement

The MAX17330 monitors the voltage at the BATT pin.

VCell Register (01Ah)

Register Type: Voltage

Nonvolatile Backup: None

Each update cycle, the reading of the cell voltage measurement is placed in the VCell register. VCell is used as the voltage input to the fuel-gauge algorithm and triggers protection FETs in case of fault conditions.

AvgVCell Register (019h)

Register Type: Voltage

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The AvgVCell register reports an average of the VCell register readings. The time period for averaging is configurable from a 12 second to 24 minute time period. See the *FilterCfg* register description for details on setting the time filter. The first VCell register reading after power-up or exiting shutdown mode sets the starting point of the AvgVCell register. Note that when a cell relaxation event is detected, the averaging period changes to the period defined by the RelaxCfg.dt setting. The register reverts to its normal averaging period when a charge or discharge current is detected.

MaxMinVolt Register (0008h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Backup: Saves to nMaxMinVolt (1ACh) if nNVCfg2.enMMV is set (does not restore from nonvolatile).

Initial Value: 0x00FF

The MaxMinVolt register maintains the maximum and minimum of VCell register values since device reset. They are compared against these values each time the voltage registers update. If the new reading is larger than the maximum or less than the minimum, the corresponding value is replaced with the new reading. At power-up, the maximum voltage value is set to 00h (the minimum) and the minimum voltage value is set to FFh (the maximum). Therefore, both values are changed to the voltage register reading after the first update. The host software can reset this register by writing it to its power-up value of 0x00FF. The maximum and minimum voltages are each stored as 8-bit values with a 20mV resolution. Table 89 shows the register format.

Table 89. MaxMinVolt (008h)/nMaxMinVolt (1ACh) Register Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
MaxVCELL								MinVCELL							

MaxVCELL: Maximum VCell register reading (20mV resolution).

MinVCELL: Minimum VCell register reading (20mV resolution).

MaxMinVolt is not cumulative across the entire battery lifetime. After each periodic nonvolatile-memory save, MaxMinVolt resets to 0x00FF to find the next max/min volt across the next segment of battery life. This behavior helps provide a useful log across the battery lifetime where each log segment shows the maximum and minimum voltage experienced across only that segment.

Cell1 Register (0D8h)

Register Type: Voltage

Nonvolatile Backup: None

In the MAX17330, the Cell1 register duplicates the voltage from the VCell register (measured at the BATT pin). This register is only provided for cross-compatibility with multicell chips where a set of cell voltages is provided.

AvgCell1 Register (0D4h)

Register Type: Voltage

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The AvgCell1 register reports an 8-sample filtered average of the corresponding Cell1 register readings.

Batt Register (0D7h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The Batt registers contains the VCell voltage measured inside the protector on a 20.48V scale with an LSB of 0.3125mV for cross-compatibility with other Maxim Integrated gauges that provide multicell functionality. This allows a generalized driver to interact both with single-cell and multicell chips.

PCKP Register (0DBh)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The PCKP register contains the voltage between PACK+ and GND on a 20.48V scale with an LSB of 0.3125mV.

MinVolt Register (0ADh)

Register Type: Voltage

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The MinVolt register maintains the minimum BATT register value within a 45 second period or until cleared by host software. Each time the BATT register updates, it is compared against its value. If the reading is less than the minimum, the corresponding value is replaced with the new reading. At power-up, MinVolt value is set to 0xFFFF. Therefore, the value is changed to the BATT register reading after the first update. The host software can reset this register by writing it to its power-up value of 0xFFFF. LSB is 1.25mV.

Current Measurement

The MAX17330 can monitor the current flow through the cell pack by measuring the voltage between the CSN and CSP pins over a ±51.2mV range. While in active mode, updates occur in intervals of 351.5ms. In hibernate mode, the update interval is set by the nHibCfg register. All ICs are calibrated for current-measurement accuracy at the factory. However, Current register readings can be adjusted by changing the nCGain register setting if the application requires it.

If the application uses a sense resistor with a large temperature coefficient such as a copper metal board trace, current readings can be adjusted based on the temperature measured by the IC. The CGTempCo register stores a percentage per °C value that is applied to current readings if the nNVCfg2.enMet bit is set. If nNVCfg1.enMtl = 0, the default temperature coefficient of copper is used for temperature adjustments. If enMt = 1, the CGTempCo register value is used for temperature adjustments.

Additionally, the IC maintains a record of the minimum and maximum current measured by the IC and an average current over a time period defined by the host. Contents of the Current and AvgCurrent registers are indeterminate for the first conversion cycle time period after IC power-up.

Current Measurement Timing

Current measurements are always enabled regardless of nPackCfg settings. Table 90 shows the timing for current measurements made by the IC. All times in this table are considered typical.

Table 90. Current Measurement Timing

APPLICATION	NPACKCFG SETTING	REGISTER	FIRST UPDATE AFTER RESET[1] (ms)	UPDATE RATE IN ACTIVE MODE (ms)	UPDATE RATE IN HIBERNATE MODE[2] (s)
Any	Any	Current	150	351	1.4
		AvgCurrent	150	351	1.4

1. AvgCurrent register is initialized using a single reading instead of an average.

2. Hibernate mode update times assume the recommended nHibCfg.HibScalar setting of 4 task periods.

Current Register (01Ch)

Register Type: Current

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The IC measures the voltage between the CSP and CSN pins, and the result is stored as a two's complement value in the Current register. Voltages outside the minimum and maximum register values are reported as the minimum or maximum value. The register value should be divided by the sense resistance to convert to amps. The value of the sense resistor determines the resolution and the full-scale range of the current readings. Table 91 shows range and resolution values for typical sense resistances.

Table 91. Current Measurement Range and Resolution vs. Sense Resistor Value

BATTERY FULL CAPACITY (mAh)	SENSE RESISTOR (mΩ)	nRSENSE	CURRENT REGISTER RESOLUTION (µA)	CURRENT REGISTER RANGE (A)	CAPACITY RESOLUTION (mAh)	MAXIMUM CAPACITY (mAh)
> 4000	1	0064h	1562.5	±51.2	5	144360
> 2000	2	00C8h	781.25	±25.6	2.5	71680
> 800	5	01F4h	312.5	±10.24	1	28672
> 400	10	03E8h	156.25	±5.12	0.5	14336
> 200	20	07D0h	78.125	±2.56	0.25	7168
> 80	50	1388h	31.25	±1.02	0.1	2867
> 40	100	2710h	15.625	±0.51	0.05	1433

AvgCurrent Register (01Dh)

Register Type: Current

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The AvgCurrent register reports an average of Current register readings over a configurable 0.7 second to 6.4 hour time period. See the *FilterCfg* register description for details on setting the time filter. The first Current register reading after returning to active mode sets the starting point of the AvgCurrent filter.

MaxMinCurr Register (00Ah)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Backup: Periodically saves to nMaxMinCurr (1ABh) if nNVCfg2.enMMC is set, but does not restore from nonvolatile memory.

Alternate Initial Value: 0x807F

The MaxMinCurr register maintains the maximum and minimum Current register values since the last IC reset or until cleared by host software. Each time the Current register updates, it is compared against these values. If the reading is larger than the maximum or less than the minimum, the corresponding value is replaced with the new reading. At power-up, the maximum current value is set to 80h (the minimum) and the minimum current value is set to 7Fh (the maximum). Therefore, both values are changed to the Current register reading after the first update. The host software can reset this register by writing it to its power-up value of 0x807F. The maximum and minimum voltages are each stored as two's complement 8-bit values with 0.4mV/R_{SENSE} resolution. Table 92 shows the register format.

Table 92. MaxMinCurr (00Ah)/nMaxMinCurr (1ABh) Register Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
MaxCurrent								MinCurrent							

MaxCurrent: Maximum Current register reading (0.40mV/R_{SENSE} resolution)

MinCurrent: Minimum Current register reading (0.40mV/R_{SENSE} resolution)

MaxMinCurr is not cumulative across the entire battery lifetime. After each periodic nonvolatile-memory save, MaxMinCurr resets to 0x807F to find the next maximum and minimum current across the next segment of battery life. This behavior helps provide a useful log across the battery lifetime where each log segment shows the maximum and minimum current experienced across only that segment.

nCGain Register (1C8h)

Register Type: Special

The nCGain register adjusts the gain and offset of the current measurement result. The current measurement A/D is factory trimmed to data sheet accuracy without the need for the user to make further adjustments. The recommended default for the nCGain register is 0x4000 which applies no adjustments to the Current register reading.

For specific application requirements, the CGain and COff values can be used to adjust readings as follows:

Current register = (current A/D reading × (CGain / 256)) + COff

CGain and COff are combined into a single register formatted as shown in Table 93.

Table 93. nCGain Register (1C8h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
CGain										COff					

COff: COff has a range of -32 to +31 LSbs. However, it is normally not recommended to calibrate COff. **COff = 0** is recommended for most applications.

CGain: The recommended default value of CGain = 0x100 corresponds to a gain of 1. CGain can be calculated as follows: CGain = ((MeasuredCurrent/ReportedCurrent) x 0x0100). CGain is a signed value and can be negative.

CGTempCo (0B8h)/nCGTempCo (0x1C9) Register

Register Type: Special

Alternate Initial Value: 0x20C8

If Config.FastADCen= 0 and nNVCfg1.enMet = 1, then CGTempCo is used to adjust current measurements for temperature. CGTempCo has a range of 0% to 3.1224% per °C with a step size of 3.1224/0x10000 percent per °C. If the nNVCfg1.enMtl bit is clear, CGTempCo defaults to a value of 0x20C8 or 0.4% per °C which is the approximate temperature coefficient of a copper trace. If the nNVCfg1.enMtl bit is set, CGTempCo restores from nCGTempCo (1C9h) after IC reset allowing a custom sense resistor temperature coefficient to be used. Note that Config.FastADCen and nNVCfg1.enMet cannot be enabled simultaneously.

Copper Trace Current Sensing

The MAX17330 can measure current using a copper board trace instead of a traditional sense resistor, the main difference being the ability to adjust to the change in sense resistance over temperature. To enable copper trace current sensing, set the following configuration bits nNVCfg1.enADCCfg = 0 and nNVCfg2.enMet = 1. The IC's default temperature adjustment is 0.4% per °C but can be adjusted using the nCGTempCo/nADCCfg register if nNVCfg1.enMtl = 1. Note that copper trace current sensing cannot be enabled at the same time as custom ADC Configuration. For 1-ounce copper, a length-to-width ratio of 6:1 creates a 0.0035Ω sense resistor which is suitable for most applications. Table 94 summarizes the IC setting for copper trace sensing.

Table 94. Copper Trace Sensing

PARAMETER	SETTING	RESULT
nNVCfg1.enADCCfg	0	ADC Configuration defaulted.
nNVCfg1.enMet	1	Sense resistor temperature compensation enabled.
nNVCfg2.enMlt	0	Sense resistor temperature compensation set to default of 0.4% per °C (typical copper).
nRense	0x012C	Sense resistor indicator to host software set to 3.5mΩ.
R_{SENSE} Size	6:1	A 6:1 length-to-width ratio of 1oz copper gives a resistance of 3.5mΩ.

MinCurr Register (0AEh)

Register Type: Current

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The MinCurr register maintains the minimum discharge Current register value within a 45-second period or until cleared by the host software. Each time the Current register updates, it is compared against its value. If the reading is less than the minimum, the corresponding value is replaced with the new reading. At power-up, MinCurr value is set to 0 (maximum discharge current). Therefore, the value is changed to the Current register reading after the first update during discharge. The host software can reset this register by writing it to its power-up value of 0. LSB is 1.5625μV/R_{SENSE}.

Temperature Measurement

The IC can be configured to measure its own internal die temperature and an external NTC thermistor. See the nPackCfg register for details.

Every 1.4s the IC biases the external thermistor with an internal trimmed pullup. After the pullup is enabled, the IC waits for a settling period of tPRE before making measurements on the TH pin. Measurement results are converted to a ratiometric value from 0% to 100%. The active pullup is disabled when temperature measurements are complete. This feature limits the time the external resistor-divider network is active and lowers the total amount of energy used by the system.

The ratiometric results are converted to temperature using logarithmic thermistor resistance translation each time the TH pin is measured. Internal die temperature measurements are factory calibrated and are not affected by *nThermCfg* register settings. Proper *nThermCfg* configuration is needed to achieve thermistor accuracy from -40ºC to +85ºC.

Additionally, the IC maintains a record of the minimum and maximum temperature measured and an average temperature over a time period defined by the host.

Temperature Measurement Timing

Temperature measurement channels are individually enabled using the nPackCfg register. A/D measurement order and firmware post-processing determine when a valid reading becomes available to the user. In addition, not all channels are measured each time through the firmware task loop. Selection options for enabled channels create a large number of possible timing options. Table 95 shows the timing for all temperature measurements made by the IC for some typical pack configurations. All times in this table are considered typical.

Table 95. Temperature Measurement Timing

APPLICATION	nPackCfg SETTING	REGISTER	FIRST UPDATE AFTER RESET	UPDATE RATE IN ACTIVE MODE[1]	UPDATE RATE IN HIBERNATE MODE[2]
Die Temperature Only	nPackCfg.A1En = 0	Temp, IntTemp, AvgIntTemp	550ms	351ms	1.4s
		AvgTA		351ms	
Die Temperature and Thermistor	nPackCfg.A1En = 1	IntTemp, Temp1, Temp, AvgIntTemp, AvgTemp1	550ms	1406ms	5.625s
		AvgTA		351ms	1.4s

1. Not all registers update at the same time. Updates are staggered to one channel per task period. Update order is IntTemp and Temp.

2. Hibernate mode update times assume the recommended nHibCfg.HibScalar setting of four task periods.

Temp Register (01Bh)

Register Type: Temperature

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The Temp register is the input to the fuel gauge algorithm. The Temp register reflects the thermistor or die temperature as configured in nPackCfg.

AvgTA Register (016h)

Register Type: Temperature

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The AvgTA register reports an average of the readings from the Temp register. Averaging period is configurable from 6 minutes up to 12 hours as set by the FilterCfg register. The first Temp register reading after returning to active mode sets the starting point of the averaging filters.

MaxMinTemp Register (009h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Backup: Periodically saves to nMaxMinTemp (1ADh) if nNVCfg2.enMMT is set, but does not restore from nonvolatile memory.

Alternate Initial Value: 0x807F

The MaxMinTemp register maintains the maximum and minimum Temp register (008h) values since the last fuel-gauge reset or until cleared by host software. It is compared against these values each time the Temp register updates. If the reading is larger than the maximum or less than the minimum, the corresponding values are replaced with the new reading. At power-up, the maximum value is set to 80h (minimum) and the minimum value is set to 7Fh (maximum). Therefore, both values are changed to the Temp register reading after the first update. Host software can reset this register by writing it to its power-up value of 0x807F. The maximum and minimum temperatures are each stored as two's complement 8-bit values with 1°C resolution. Table 96 shows the format of the register.

Table 96. MaxMinTemp (009h)/nMaxMinTemp (1ADh) Register Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
MaxTemperature								MinTemperature							

MaxTemperature: Maximum Temp register reading (1ºC resolution)

MinTemperature: Minimum Temp register reading (1ºC resolution)

MaxMinTemp is not cumulative across the entire battery lifetime. After each periodic nonvolatile memory save, MaxMinTemp resets to 0x807F to find the next maximum and minimum temperatures across the next segment of battery life. This behavior helps provide a useful log across the battery lifetime where each log segment shows the maximum and minimum temperature experienced across only that segment.

nThermCfg Register (1CAh)

Factory Default Value: 71BEh

External NTC thermistors generate a temperature-related voltage measured at the TH/TH2 pins. Set nThermCfg register to compensate the thermistor for accurate translation of temperature.

Table 97 lists common NTC thermistors with their associated Beta value and the nThermCfg value. The thermistors in the table translate within ±1°C from -40°C to +85°C. For other thermistors, use the equation in Table 97 to translate within ±2.5°C.

Table 97. Register Settings for Common Thermistor Types

THERMISTOR	R_{25C}(kΩ)	BETA at 25°C to 85°C	nThermCfg
Murata NCP15XH103F03RC	10	3435	71E8h
Semitec 103AT-2	10	3435	91C3h
TDK B57560G1103 7003	10	3610	5183h
Murata NCU15WF104F6SRC	100	4250	48EBh
NTC TH11-4H104F	100	4510	08D9h
TDK NTCG064EF104FTBX	100	4225	58EFh
Other 10K	10	nThermCfg = 7000h + (3245919/Beta[1] - 512)	
Other 100K	100	nThermCfg = 3000h + (3245919/Beta[1] - 512)	

1. Use Beta 25°C to 85°C.

DieTemp (034h) Register

Register Type: Temperature

Nonvolatile Backup: None

This register displays temperature in degrees Celsius, ±128ºC, or 1ºC in the high-byte, or 1/256ºC LSB.

AvgDieTemp (040h) Register

Register Type: Temperature

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The AvgDieTemp register reports a 4-sample filtered average of the DieTemp register.

FETTemp (015h) Register

Register Type: Temperature

Nonvolatile Backup: None

This register displays FET temperature in degrees Celsius, ±128ºC, or 1ºC in the high-byte, or 1/256ºC LSB.

FETTemp is used during charge regulation to regulate/limit the FET temperature during charging.

When a second thermistor is not installed and enabled, FETTemp simply equals DieTemp, and DieTemp is used as an approximation for FET temperature.

When a second thermistor is installed, FETTemp is calculated by the temperature measured at TH2 and exaggerated according to the thermal gradient observed between TH2 and DieTemp. The gradient helps estimate the "unseen temperature" inside the FET (which is always hotter than any directly measurable temperature) according to the following equation:

FETTemp = TH2_Temp + (TH2_Temp - DieTemp) x FetTheta

The FetTheta range is 0 to 4.0 with 0.125 steps.

See also the nChgCfg1 and nPackCfg for more details to enable and configure the FET thermistor.

Power

Power Register (0B1h)

Instant power calculation from immediate current and voltage. LSB is 0.8mW with a 10mΩ sense resistor.

AvgPower Register (0B3h)

Filtered Average Power from the power register. LSB is 0.8mW with a 10mΩ sense resistor. Filter bits located in Config2.POWR.

nADCCfg Register (1C9h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: There is no associated restore location for this register.

Set Config.FastADCen = 1 and nNVCfg2.enMet = 0, to use nADCCfg to set the the ADC for longer samples which reduce sample noise at the expense of quiescent current.

Table 98. nADCCfg (0x1C9) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
TermEn	ChgTermEn	0	1	0	0	nTerm			0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Default value: 0x5188

Standard configuration for ADC averaging count select is fixed 4ms. With nADCCfg settings, longer than 4ms ADC conversions are possible and result in less noisy ADC readings.

Default value for nADCCfg reduces VCell noise by 4x (64ms), PCKP/Temp noise by 3x (32ms)

ChgTermEn: ADC Changes are only enabled during charging. Current consumption is not sensitive while the charge source is present. ADC behavior is returned back to 4ms sampling when the charge source is removed.

TermEn: ADC Changes are always on. This has significant current consumption impact and is not recommended.

nTerm: ADC averaging count select.

(0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, or 7) setting of nMaxTerm/nTerm corresponds to (4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, or 512)ms per ADC channel conversion, respectively.

256ms, 512ms choices are not recommended to avoid timekeeping issues.

Status and Configuration Registers

The following registers control IC operation not related to the fuel gauge such as power-saving modes, nonvolatile backup, and ALRT pin functionality.

DevName Register (021h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The DevName register holds firmware revision information. This allows the host software to easily identify the type of IC being communicated with. Table 99 shows the DevName register format.

Table 99. DevName Register (021h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
Revision															

The DevName for the IC is 0x40B0 or 0x40B1.

nROMID0 (1BCh)/nROMID1 (1BDh)/nROMID2 (1BEh)/nROMID3 (1BFh) Registers

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: There are no associated restore locations for these registers.

Each MAX17330 IC contains a unique 64-bit identification value that is contained in the nROMID registers. The unique ID can be reconstructed from the nROMID registers as shown in Table 100.

Table 100. nROMID Registers (1BCh to 1BFh) Format

NROMID3[15:0]	NROMID2[15:0]	NROMID1[15:0]	NROMID0[15:0]
ROM ID [63:48]	ROM ID [47:32]	ROM ID [31:16]	ROM ID [15:0]

Status Register (000h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Backup: None

Initial Value: 0x0002

The Status register maintains all flags related to alert thresholds. Table 101 shows the Status register format.

Table 101. Status Register (000h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PA	Smx	Tmx	Vmx	CA	Smn	Tmn	Vmn	dSOCi	Imx	AllowChgB	X	Bst	Imn	POR	X

POR: Power-On Reset. This bit is set to 1 when the device detects that a software or hardware POR event has occurred. This bit must be cleared by the system software to detect the next POR event. POR is set to 1 at power-up.

Imn: Minimum Current Alert Threshold Exceeded. This bit is set to 1 whenever a Current register reading is below the minimum IAlrtTh value. This bit is cleared automatically when Current rises above minimum IAlrtTh value. Imn is set to 0 at power-up.

Bst: Battery Status. Useful when the IC is used in a host-side application. This bit is set to 0 when a battery is present in the system and set to 1 when the battery is absent. Bst is set to 0 at power-up.

Imx: Maximum Current Alert Threshold Exceeded. This bit is set to 1 whenever a Current register reading is above the maximum IAlrtTh value. This bit is cleared automatically when Current falls below the maximum IAlrtTh value. Imx is set to 0 at power-up.

dSOCi: State of Charge 1% Change Alert. This is set to 1 whenever the RepSOC register crosses an integer percentage boundary such as 50%, 51%, etc. Must be cleared by the host software. dSOCi is set to 0 at power-up.

Vmn: Minimum Voltage Alert Threshold Exceeded. This bit is set to 1 whenever a VCell register reading is below the minimum VAlrtTh value. This bit may or may not need to be cleared by system software to detect the next event. See the Config.VS bit description. Vmn is set to 0 at power-up.

Tmn: Minimum Temperature Alert Threshold Exceeded. This bit is set to 1 whenever a Temperature register reading is below the minimum TAlrtTh value. This bit may or may not need to be cleared by system software to detect the next event. See the Config.TS bit description. Tmn is set to 0 at power-up.

Smn: Minimum SOC Alert Threshold Exceeded. This bit is set to 1 whenever SOC falls below the minimum SAlrtTh value. This bit may or may not need to be cleared by system software to detect the next event. See the Config.SS and MiscCFG.SACFG bit descriptions. Smn is set to 0 at power-up.

Vmx: Maximum Voltage Alert Threshold Exceeded. This bit is set to 1 whenever a VCell register reading is above the maximum VAlrtTh value. This bit may or may not need to be cleared by the system software to detect the next event. See the Config.VS bit description. Vmx is set to 0 at power-up.

Tmx: Maximum Temperature Alert Threshold Exceeded. This bit is set to 1 whenever a Temperature register reading is above the maximum TAlrtTh value. This bit may or may not need to be cleared by the system software to detect the next event. See the Config.TS bit description. Tmx is set to 0 at power-up.

Smx: Maximum SOC Alert Threshold Exceeded. This bit is set to 1 whenever SOC rises above the maximum SAlrtTh value. This bit may or may not need to be cleared by the system software to detect the next event. See the Config.SS and MiscCFG.SACFG bit descriptions. Smx is set to 0 at power-up.

PA: Protection Alert. This bit is set to a 1 when there is a protection event. The details of each protection event can be found in the ProtAlrt register. This bit must be cleared by the system software to detect the next protection event. However, before clearing this bit, the ProtAlrt register must first be written to 0x0000. ProtAlrt is set to 0 at power-up.

CA: Charging Alert. This bit is set to a 1 when there is a CP or CT or Dropout event. The details of each charging event can be found in the Chgstat register. This bit must be cleared by the system software to detect the next event. Chgstat updates every 351ms and does not require interaction from the system software to clear it.

AllowChgB: Allow Charge Bar. The AllowChgB bit is used for managing the charging or discharging of multiple batteries in parallel and is enabled by setting nPackCfg.ParEn = 1. Clear this bit to 0 to allow charging as well as block discharging when Config2.BlockDis = 1. This bit must be cleared every 1.4 seconds for continuous charging or continuous discharge blocking.

X: Don't Care. This bit is undefined and can be logic 0 or 1.

Status2 Register (0B0h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Backup: None

Initial Value: 0x0000

The Status2 register maintains status of hibernate mode. Table 102 shows the Status register format.

Table 102. Status2 Register (0B0h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	Hib	x

Hib: Hibernate Status. This bit is set to 1 when the device is in hibernate mode or 0 when the device is in active mode. Hib is set to 0 at power-up.

X: Don't Care. This bit is undefined and can be logic 0 or 1.

nI2CCfg Register (1B4h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: There is no associated restore location for this register.

The nI2CCfg register manages settings for I^2C and SBS mode operation of the IC. Table 103 shows the register format.

Table 103. nI2CCfg Register (1B4h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
CapMd	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	SDA_OUT	DIS_SLT	WPen	MECfg		X

X: Don't Care. This bit is undefined and can be logic 0 or 1.

WPen: Write Protection Enable. WPen = 0 (Default) to enable write protection.

DIS_SLT: Disable Slave Timeout. DIS_SLT = 0 to enable slave timeout where slave stops communicating and drops off the bus after 30mS of SCL low duration. DIS_SLT = 1 (Default) to disable the slave timeout.

SDA_OUT: Enable SDA output to PFail pin. Set SDA_OUT = 1 to enable PFAIL pin to become open-drain for SDA and SDA pin is input only. SDA pin is bi-directional when SDA_OUT is 0 (Default).

MECfg: Configures sMaxError register output when operating in SBS mode.

00: Always report 0% error

01: Always report 1% error

10: Report actual experienced error

11: Always report 3% error

CapMd: Selects sBatteryMode.CapMd bit default setting when operating in SBS mode. CapMd resets to 0 every time a pack removal occurs as detected by floating communication lines.

nPackCfg Register(1B5h)

Register Type: Special

The nPackCfg register configures the voltage and temperature inputs to the A/D and also to the fuel gauge. nPackCfg configuration must match the pack hardware for proper operation of the IC. Table 104 shows the register format. The factory default for nPackCfg is 0x1000.

Table 104. nPackCfg (1B5h) Register Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
0	S_Hib	THCfg		THType	000			0	ParEn	I2CSid		0001			

I2CSid Configure the I^2C address and SMBus address with this bit field. For dynamic changes to the I^2C address, see *I2CCmd Register*.

Table 105. I^2C Address Configuration

I2CSID	PRIMARY ADDRESS	SECONDARY ADDRESS
0b00	6Ch	16h
0b01	ECh	96h
0b10	64h	1Eh
0b11	E4h	9Eh

ParEn: Enable parallel charging feature. See *Parallel Battery Management* section for details.

THType: If using a 10kΩ NTC thermistor, set THType = 0. If using a 100kΩ NTC thermistor, set THType = 1. See nThermCfg for additional details.

THCfg: THCfg sets the Thermistor behavior. Note TH2 is only available when ZVC is not used.

Table 106. Thermistor Configuration

THCFG	BEHAVIOR
0b00	Both thermistors channels disabled. Temp and FETTemp are measured from DieTemp.
0b01	Thermistor 1 is used as battery temperature, Thermistor 2 is used with DieTemp for calculating FETTemp.
0b10	Thermistor 1 is enabled. FETTemp is copied from DieTemp.
0b11	Invalid. Do not set.

S_Hib: Ship-Mode Hibernate. Set S_Hib = 1 to use hibernate operation during ship-mode. Set S_Hib = 0 for full-shutdown during ship-mode (0.5μA or 0.1μA, see nProtCfg). In Hibernate mode, the fuel gauge functionality is active and the battery state is continually updated.

I2CCmd Register(12Bh)

Register Type: Special

The I2CCmd register changes the primary and secondary slave addresses of MAX17330. To change the slave ID, configure the Alert pin to a logic HIGH or LOW, write the target GoToSID and IncSID bits, and wait 1.4s. Table 107 shows the register format. If the Alert pin is logic HIGH, the I^2C addresses of the device change to the addresses listed in the ALERT HIGH column of Table 108. If the Alert pin is logic LOW, the I^2C addresses of the device change to the addresses listed in the ALERT LOW column of Table 108. If multiple MAX17330 devices are sharing the same I^2C bus, the Alert pin on one device should be set to logic LOW and the others set to logic HIGH, allowing the devices to move to different I^2C slave addresses.

Table 107. I2CCmd (12Bh) Register Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
0										GoToSID		0			IncSID

GoToSID: Configure the primary I^2C slave address and secondary slave address with this bit field. The primary slave address applies to all registers with a leading "0" in the register address, for example, 022h. The secondary slave address applies to all registers with a leading "1" in the register address, for example, 1AAh. **Note:** The addresses shown in Table 108 are 8-bit slave addresses.

Table 108. GoToSID Address Configuration

GoToSID	ALERT HIGH	ALERT LOW
—	Primary/Secondary Address	Primary/Secondary Address
0b00	ECh/96h	6Ch/16h
0b01	64h/1Eh	ECh/96h
0b10	E4h/9Eh	64h/1Eh
0b11	6Ch/16h	E4h/9Eh

IncSID: Set to 1 to incremement the Slave ID as defined in the GoTOSID bitfield.

nConfig Register (1B0h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: Config (00Bh) and Config2 (0ABh) if nNVCfg0.enCfg is set.

Alternate Initial Value: 0x2214 for Config, 0x2058 for Config2

The nConfig register holds all shutdown enable, alert enable, and temperature enable control bits. Writing a bit location enables the corresponding function within one task period. Table 109, Table 110, and Table 111 show the register formats.

Table 109. nConfig Register (1B0h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
PAen	SS	TS	VS	0	PBen	DisBlockRead	0
D7	**D6**	**D5**	**D4**	**D3**	**D2**	**D1**	**D0**
AtRateEn	COMMSH	FastADCen	1	FTHRM	Aen	dSOCen	TAlrtEn

Table 110. Config Register (00Bh) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
0	SS	TS	VS	0	PBen	DisBlockRead	$\overline{\text{ChgAutoCtrl}}$
D7	**D6**	**D5**	**D4**	**D3**	**D2**	**D1**	**D0**
SHIP	COMMSH	FastADCen	ETHRM	FTHRM	Aen	CAen	PAen

Table 111. Config2 Register (0ABh) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
POR_CMD	0	AtRtEn	0	POWR			
D7	**D6**	**D5**	**D4**	**D3**	**D2**	**D1**	**D0**
dSOCen	TAlrtEn	0	1	DRCfg		CPMode	BlockDis

0: Bit must be written 0. Do not write 1.

1: Bit must be written 1. Do not write 0.

BlockDis: Block Discharge. The BlockDis bit is used for managing the discharging of multiple batteries in parallel and is enabled by setting nPackCfg.ParEn = 1. Set to 1 and clear Status.BlockChg to enable blocking of discharge current. See Parallel management for more detail.

PAen: Protection Alert Enable. Set PAen = 1 to enable this feature that saves the protector faults (TooHotC, TooColdC, OVP, OCCP, DieHot, TooHotD, UVP, ODCP, and LDet) into the low byte of the nBattStatus register. After each life logging write to NVM, the low byte of nBattStatus is cleared.

CAen: Charge alerts enable. Set CAen = 1 to drive the ALRT pin low on dropout or heat limit alerts. Config.Aen must be set to 1 to allow this function.

PBEn: PushButton enable. Set PBEn = 1 to enable wakeup by pushbutton. This application allows a gadget to be completely sealed with the battery disconnected until a shared system button is pressed.

DisBlockRead: Disable SBS Block Read. Set DisBlockRead to 1 for normal read access in the 16h memory space. Clear DisBlockRead to 0 to enable SBS block reads when SBS Mode is enabled with nNVCfg0.SBSen. The default setting for DisBlockRead is 1.

Aen: Enable alert on fuel-gauge outputs. When Aen = 1, violation of any of the alert threshold register values by temperature, voltage, or SOC triggers an alert. This bit affects the ALRT pin operation only. The Smx, Smn, Tmx, Tmn, Vmx, Vmn, Imx, and Imn bits of the Status register (000h) are not disabled. Note that if this bit is set to 1, the ALSH bit should be set to 0 to prevent an alert condition from causing the device to enter shutdown mode.

FTHRM: Force Thermistor Bias Switch. This allows the host to control the bias of the thermistor switch or enable fast detection of battery removal. Set FTHRM = 1 to always enable the thermistor bias switch. With a standard 10kΩ thermistor, this adds an additional ~200μA to the current drain of the circuit.

ETHRM: Enable Thermistor. Set to logic 1 to enable the automatic TH output bias and TH measurement.

FastADCen: Enable FastADC. Set to logic 1 to enable the FastADC feature.

COMMSH: Communication Shutdown. Set to logic 1 to force the device to enter shutdown mode if both SDA and SCL are held low. This also configures the device to wake up on a rising edge of any communication. See Table 9.

SHIP: Ship or Deepship Command. Write this bit to logic 1 to force into ship or deepship mode based on nProtCfg.DeepShpEn after timeout of the Shutdown Timer register, which is configured in nDelayCfg.UVPTimer. SHIP is reset to 0 at power-up and upon exiting ship or deepship mode.

VS: Voltage ALRT Sticky. When VS = 1, voltage alerts can only be cleared through software. When VS = 0, voltage alerts are cleared automatically when the threshold is no longer exceeded.

TS: Temperature ALRT Sticky. When TS = 1, temperature alerts can only be cleared through software. When TS = 0, temperature alerts are cleared automatically when the threshold is no longer exceeded.

SS: SOC ALRT Sticky. When SS = 1, SOC alerts can only be cleared through software. When SS = 0, SOC alerts are cleared automatically when the threshold is no longer exceeded.

$\overline{\text{ChgAutoCtrl}}$: CHG FET is controlled ON/OFF only. Normal applications should set nProtCfg.$\overline{\text{nChgAutoCtrl}}$ and config.Legacy to 0. Set nProtCfg.$\overline{\text{nChgAutoCtrl}}$ and config.$\overline{\text{ChgAutoCtrl}}$ to 1 to use this function. Charge control is not used. Ideal diode mode is not used.

POR_CMD: Firmware Restart. Set this bit to 1 to restart IC firmware operation without performing a recall of nonvolatile memory into RAM. This allows different IC configurations to be tested without changing nonvolatile memory settings. This bit is set to 0 at power-up and automatically clears itself after firmware restart.

TAlrten: Temperature Alert Enable. Set this bit to 1 to enable temperature based alerts. Write this bit to 0 to disable temperature alerts. This bit is set to 1 at power-up.

dSOCen: SOC Change Alert Enable. Set this bit to 1 to enable the Status.dSOCi bit function. Write this bit to 0 to disable the Status.dSOCi bit. This bit is set to 0 at power-up.

CPMode: Constant-power mode. Set to 1 to enable constant-power mode.

DRCfg: Deep Relax Time Configuration. 0b00 for 0.8 hours to 1.6 hours, 0b01 for 1.6 hours to 3.2 hours, 0b10 hours for 3.2 hours to 6.4 hours, and 0b11 hours for 6.4 hours to 12.8 hours.

POWR: Sets the time constant for the AvgPower register. The default POR value of 0000b gives a time constant of 0.7s. The equation setting the period is:

AvgPower time constant = 45s x $2^{(POWR-6)}$

nHibCfg Register (1BBh)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: None

The nHibCfg register controls hibernate mode functionality. The IC enters hibernate mode if the measured system current falls below the HibThreshold setting for longer than the HibEnterTime delay. While in hibernate mode, the IC reduces its operating current by slowing down its task period as defined by the HibScalar setting. The IC automatically returns to active mode of operation if current readings go above the HibThreshold setting for longer than the HibExitTime delay. Table 112 shows the register format.

Table 112. nHibCfg Register (1BBh) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
EnHib	HibEnterTime			HibThreshold				0	0	0	HibExitTime		HibScalar		

0: Bit must be written 0. Do not write 1.

HibScalar: Sets the task period while in hibernate mode based on the following equation:

Hibernate Mode Task Period(s) = 702ms x $2^{(HibScalar)}$

HibExitTime: Sets the required time period of consecutive current readings above the HibThreshold value before the IC exits hibernate mode and returns to active mode of operation.

Hibernate Mode Exit Time(s) = (HibExitTime + 1) x 702ms x $2^{(HibScalar)}$

HibThreshold: Sets the threshold level for entering or exiting hibernate mode. The threshold is calculated as a fraction of the full capacity of the cell using the following equation:

Hibernate Mode Threshold(mA) = (FullCap(mAh)/0.8 hours)/$2^{(HibThreshold)}$

HibEnterTime: Sets the time period that consecutive current readings must remain below the HibThreshold value before the IC enters hibernate mode as defined by the following equation. The default HibEnterTime value of 000b causes the IC to enter hibernate mode if all current readings are below the HibThreshold for a period of 5.625 seconds, but the IC could enter hibernate mode as quickly as 2.812 seconds.

2.812s x $2^{(HibEnterTime)}$ < Hibernate Mode Entry Time < 2.812s x $2^{(HibEnterTime + 1)}$

EnHib: Enable Hibernate Mode. When set to 1, the IC enters hibernate mode if conditions are met. When set to 0, the IC always remains in active mode of operation.

nRSense Register (1CFh)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: There is no associated restore location for this register.

The nRSense register is the designated location to store the sense resistor value used by the application. This value is not used by the IC as all current and capacity information is reported in terms of μV and μVh. Host software can use the nRSense register value to convert current and capacity information into mA and mAh. It is recommended that the sense resistor value be stored with a LSb weight of 10μΩ, which gives a range of 10μΩ to 655.35mΩ. Table 113 shows recommended register settings based on common sense resistor values.

Table 113. Recommended nRSense Register Values for Common Sense Resistors

SENSE RESISTOR (Ω)	nRSENSE REGISTER
0.005	0x01F4
0.010	0x03E8
0.020	0x07D0

nDesignVoltage Register (1E3h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: There is no associated restore location for this register.

Table 114. nDesignVoltage Register (1E3h) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
Vminsys								Vdesign							

Vminsys: (unsigned byte) = Minimum system voltage specification for the design. Generates MinSysVoltage value.

Vdesign: (unsigned byte) = Design voltage specification for the design.

Each byte has a LSB = 20mV (resolution) giving a full-scale range between 0V and 5.12V.

These values are used in Dynamic Power Calculations when enDP = 1.

AtRate Functionality

The AtRate function allows the host software to see theoretical remaining time or capacity for any given load current. AtRate can be used for power management by limiting system loads depending on the present conditions of the cell pack. Whenever the AtRate register is programmed to a negative value indicating a hypothetical discharge current, the AtQResidual, AtTTE, AtAvSOC, and AtAvCap registers display theoretical residual capacity, time-to-empty, state-of-charge, and available capacity respectively. The host software should wait two full task periods (703ms minimum in active mode) after writing the AtRate register before reading any of the result registers.

AtRate Register (004h)

Register Type: Current

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The host software should write the AtRate register with a negative two's-complement 16-bit value of a theoretical load current prior to reading any of the AtRate output registers.

AtQResidual Register (0DCh)

Register Type: Capacity

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The AtQResidual register displays the residual charge held by the cell at the theoretical load current level entered into the AtRate register.

AtTTE Register (0DDh)

Register Type: Time

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The AtTTE register can be used to estimate time-to-empty for any theoretical current load entered into the AtRate register. The AtTTE register displays the estimated time-to-empty for the application by dividing AtAvCap by the AtRate register value.

AtAvSOC Register (0CEh)

Register Type: Percentage

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The AtAvSOC register holds the theoretical state-of-charge of the cell based on the theoretical current load of the AtRate register. The register value is stored as a percentage with a resolution of 0.0039% per LSB. If a 1% resolution state-of-charge value is desired, the host can read only the upper byte of the register instead.

AtAvCap Register (0DFh)

Register Type: Capacity

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The AtAvCap register holds the estimated remaining capacity of the cell based on the theoretical load current value of the AtRate register. The value is stored in terms of μVh and must be divided by the application sense-resistor value in terms of mΩ to determine the remaining capacity in mAh.

Alert Function

The Alert Threshold registers allow interrupts to be generated by detecting a high or low voltage, current, temperature, or state-of-charge. Interrupts are generated on the ALRT pin open-drain output driver. An external pullup resistor is required to generate a logic-high signal. Alerts can be triggered by any of the following conditions:

- Over/undervoltage—VAlrtTr register threshold violation (upper or lower) and alerts enabled (Aen = 1).
- Over/undertemperature—TAlrtTr register threshold violation (upper or lower) and alerts enabled (Aen = 1).
- Over/under current—IAlrtTr register threshold violation (upper or lower) and alerts enabled (Aen = 1).
- Over/under SOC—SAlrtTr register threshold violation (upper or lower) and alerts enabled (Aen = 1).

To prevent false interrupts, the threshold registers should be initialized before setting the Aen bit. Alerts generated by battery insertion or removal can only be reset by clearing the corresponding bit in the Status (000h) register. Alerts generated by a threshold-level violation can be configured to be cleared only by the host software or cleared automatically when the threshold level is no longer violated. See the Config register description for details of the alert function configuration.

nVAlrtTh Register (18Ch)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: VAlrtTh (001h) if nNVCfg1.enAT is set.

Alternate Initial Value: 0xFF00 (Disabled)

The nVAlrtTh register shown in Table 115 sets upper and lower limits that generate an ALRT pin interrupt if exceeded by the VCell register value. The upper 8 bits set the maximum value and the lower 8 bits set the minimum value. Interrupt threshold limits are selectable with 20mV resolution over the full operating range of the VCell register. At power-up, the thresholds default to their maximum settings unless they are configured to be restored from nonvolatile memory instead by setting the nNVCfg1.enAT bit.

Table 115. VAlrtTh (001h)/nVAlrtTh (18Ch) Register Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
VMAX								VMIN							

VMAX: Maximum voltage reading. An alert is generated if the VCell register reading exceeds this value. This field has 20mV LSb resolution.

VMIN: Minimum voltage reading. An alert is generated if the VCell register reading falls below this value. This field has 20mV LSb resolution.

nTAlrtTh Register (18Dh)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: TAlrtTh (002h) if nNVCfg1.enAT is set.

Alternate Initial Value: 0x7F80 (Disabled)

The nTAlrtTh register shown in Table 116 sets upper and lower limits that generate an ALRT pin interrupt if exceeded by the Temp register value. The upper 8 bits set the maximum value and the lower 8 bits set the minimum value. Interrupt threshold limits are stored in 2's-complement format with 1ºC resolution over the full operating range of the Temp register. At power-up, the thresholds default to their maximum settings unless they are configured to be restored from nonvolatile memory instead by setting the nNVCfg1.enAT bit.

Table 116. TAlrtTh (002h)/nTAlrtTh (18Dh) Register Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
TMAX								TMIN							

TMAX: Maximum temperature reading. An alert is generated if the Temp register reading exceeds this value. This field is signed 2's-complement format with 1ºC LSb resolution.

TMIN: Minimum temperature reading. An alert is generated if the Temp register reading falls below this value. This field is signed 2's-complement format with 1ºC LSb resolution.

nSAlrtTh Register (18Fh)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: SAlrtTh (003h) if nNVCfg1.enAT is set.

Alternate Initial Value: 0xFF00 (Disabled)

The nSAlrtTh register shown in Table 117 sets upper and lower limits that generate an ALRT pin interrupt if exceeded by the selected RepSOC, AvSOC, MixSOC, or VFSOC register values. See the MiscCFG.SACFG setting for details. The upper 8 bits set the maximum value and the lower 8 bits set the minimum value. Interrupt threshold limits are selectable with 1% resolution over the full operating range of the selected SOC register. At power-up, the thresholds default to their maximum settings unless they are configured to be restored from nonvolatile memory instead by setting the nNVCfg1.enAT bit.

Table 117. SAlrtTh (003h)/nSAlrtTh (18Fh) Register Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
SMAX								SMIN							

SMAX: Maximum state-of-charge reading. An alert is generated if the selected SOC register reading exceeds this value. This field has 1% LSb resolution.

SMIN: Minimum state-of-charge reading. An alert is generated if the selected SOC register reading falls below this value. This field has 1% LSb resolution.

nIAlrtTh Register (0ACh)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: IAlrtTh (1ACh) if nNVCfg1.enAT is set.

Alternate Initial Value: 0x7F80 (Disabled)

The nIAlrtTh register shown in Table 118 sets upper and lower limits that generate an ALRT pin interrupt if exceeded by the Current register value. The upper 8 bits set the maximum value and the lower 8 bits set the minimum vaue. Interrupt threshold limits are selectable with 400μV resolution over the full operating range of the Current register. At power-up, the thresholds default to their maximum settings unless they are configured to be restored from nonvolatile memory instead by setting the nNVCfg1.enAT bit.

Table 118. IAlrtTh (0ACh)/nIAlrtTh (18Eh) Register Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
CURRMAX								CURRMIN							

CURRMAX: Maximum Current Threshold. An alert is generated if the current register reading exceeds this value. This field is signed 2's-complement with 400μV LSb resolution to match the upper byte of the Current register.

CURRMIN: Minimum Current Threshold. An alert is generated if the current register reading falls below this value. This field is signed 2's-complement with 400μV LSb resolution to match the upper byte of the Current register.

Smart Battery Compliant Operation

The is compliant to the Smart Battery Specification v1.1 when nNVCfg0.enSBS = 1. Enabling SBS operation does not interfere with normal operation of the IC. SBS formatted registers are accessed at slave address 16h and memory addresses 100h to 17Fh using SBS protocols. SBS functionality can be configured using the nSBSCfg and nDesignVoltage registers.

SBS Compliant Memory Space (I²C Interface Only)

The MAX17330 contains an SBS v1.1 Compliant memory space on pages 10h to 17h that can be accessed using the Read Word, Write Word, and Read Block commands at 2-Wire slave address 16h. Table 119 lists the SBS compliant registers. Refer to the SBS 1.1 Specification for details of registers at addresses 100h to 12Fh. Registers marked with Note 3 in the table are shared between SBS and normal IC functions and are always readable regardless of IC settings. Their format is described in the *Analog Measurements* section of the data sheet. All other registers on pages 13h to 17h are described in this section. Greyed locations are reserved and should not be written to.

Table 119. SBS Register Space Memory Map

PAGE/ WORD	10XH	11XH	12XH	13XH	14XH	15XH	16XH	17XH
0h	sManfctAccess	sFullCap	sManfctrName[1]	—	—	—	—	—
1h	sRemCapAlarm	sRunTTE	sDeviceName[1]	—	—	—	—	—
2h	sRemTimeAlarm	sAvgTTE	sDevChemistry[1]	—	—	—	—	—
3h	sBatteryMode	sAvgTTF	sManfctData[2]	—	—	—	—	—
4h	sAtRate	sChargingCurrent	—	Temp1[3]	—	—	—	—
5h	—	sChargingVoltage	—	IntTemp[3]	—	—	—	—
6h	sAtTTE	sBatteryStatus	—	sFirstUsed	—	—	—	—
7h	sAtRateOK	sCycles	—	AvgTemp1[3]	—	—	sAvCap	—
8h	sTemperature	sDesignCap	—	AvgIntTemp[3]	—	—	sMixCap	—
9h	sPackVoltage	sDesignVolt	—	—	—	—	—	—
Ah	sCurrent	sSpecInfo	—	—	—	—	—	—
Bh	sAvgCurrent	sManfctDate	—	—	—	—	—	—
Ch	sMaxError	sSerialNumber[2]	—	—	—	—	—	—
Dh	sRelSOC	—	—	—	—	—	CGTempCo[3]	—
Eh	sAbsSOC	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Fh	sRemCap	—	—	sCell1	sAvgCell1	—	—	—

1. Location is read as ASCII data using the Read Block command.
2. Location is read as Hexadecimal data using the Read Block command.
3. Location is shared between SBS and normal IC functions and is always readable regardless of IC settings.

sRemCapAlarm/sRemTimeAlarm Registers (101h/102h)

Register Type: Capacity/Time

Nonvolatile Restore: None

sRemCapAlarm: sRemCapAlarm defaults to DesignCap/10 at startup.

sRemTimeAlarm: sRemTimeAlarm defaults to 10min at startup.

At-Rate Functionality

sAtRate Register (104h)

Register Type: Current

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The host software should write the sAtRate register with a negative two's-complement 16-bit value of a theoretical load current prior to reading any of the at-rate output registers. AtRate calculations are performed using sAtRate (0x104) if enSBS = 1 or AtRate(0x004) if enSBS = 0.

sAtTTF Register (105h)

Register Type: Time

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The sAtTTF register can be used to estimate time to full for any theoretical current load entered into the sAtRate register. AtRate calculations are performed using either sAtRate (0x104) if enSBS = 1 or AtRate(0x004) if enSBS = 0.

sAtTTE Register (105h)

Register Type: Time

Nonvolatile Backup: None

The sAtTTE register can be used to estimate time-to-empty for any theoretical current load entered into the sAtRate register. The AtTTE register displays the estimated time-to-empty for the application by dividing AtAvCap by the sAtRate register value. sAtTTE is translated from AtTTE for conversion into minutes. AtRate calculations are performed using either sAtRate (0x104) if enSBS = 1 or AtRate(0x004) if enSBS = 0.

sAtRateOK Register (107h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: None

From SBS spec AtRateOK():

Description:

Returns a boolean value that indicates whether or not the battery can deliver the previously written AtRate value of additional energy for 10 seconds (boolean). If the AtRate value is zero or positive, the AtRateOK() function ALWAYS returns true. The result can depend on the setting of CAPACITY_MODE bit.

Purpose:

The AtRateOK() function is part of a two-function call-set used by power management systems to determine if the battery can safely supply enough energy for an additional load. It is used immediately after the SMBus host sets the AtRate value.

sTemperature Register (108h)

Register Type: Temperature

Nonvolatile Restore: None

Temperature is translated from AvgTA register.

sPackVoltage Register (109h)

Register Type: Voltage

Nonvolatile Restore: None

Voltage is translated from sCELL1.

sChargingCurrent Register (114h)

Register Type: Current

Nonvolatile Restore: None

As for the SBS, this register returns the smart battery's desired charging rate in mA.

sDesignVolt Register (119h)

Register Type: Voltage

Nonvolatile Restore: None

sDesignVolt is represented per cell.

sSpecInfo Register (11Ah)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Backup: None

Table 120. SpecInfo (11Ah) Format

D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1 (PEC)	0	0	0	1

PEC: PEC indicates whether the pack is configured to support SMBus PEC correction. PEC is always enabled on the MAX17330 in SBS Mode.

sSerialNumber Register (11Ch to 11Eh)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: None

SerialNumber indicates the 16-bit serial number as stored in nSerialNumber MTP. SerialNumber2 and SerialNumber3 provide extended data for the serial number as stored in nSerialNumber2 and nSerialNumber3. By using 6-bytes total, a serial number can provide a very unique ID for 281 trillion devices. A 4-byte serial number can support 4.3 billion devices. Some of the bits can be fixed to indicate the platform or other information.

sManfctrName Register (120h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: nManfctrName

A block SMBus/I^{2}C read of 0x20 on I^{2}C slave 0x16 (SBS) reports RAM addresses 0x120 sequenced with 0x146-0x14A, for a total of 6-words of data. The first byte indicates the byte length and the following bytes are ASCII characters representing the brand name of the pack. This data is taken from nManfctrName MTP, except that the byte count is set by firmware instead of saved in MTP.

sDeviceName Register (121h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: nDeviceName

A block SMBus/I^{2}C read of 0x21 on I^{2}C slave 0x16 (SBS) reports RAM addresses 0x121 sequenced with 0x140 to 0x143, for a total of 5-words of data. The first byte indicates the byte length and the following bytes are ASCII characters representing the device name. This data is taken from nDeviceName MTP, except that the byte-count is set by firmware instead of saved in MTP.

sDevChemistry Register (122h)

Register Type: Special

Nonvolatile Restore: None

A block SMBus/I^{2}C read of 0x22 on I^{2}C slave 0x16 (SBS) reports RAM addresses 0x122 sequenced with 0x156 to 0x158, for a total of 4-words of data. The first byte indicates the byte length and the following bytes are ASCII characters representing the device chemistry. This string is always “LION” for the MAX17330, which is standard for all SBS packs.

sManfctData Registers (123h to 12Fh)

Register Type: Various

Nonvolatile Restore: None

The bytes of this read-block command are defined as follows:

Byte 0: Cell count. Copy from NCELLS information.

Byte 1: High-Byte of eep_MEM_VER

Byte 2: Low-byte of eep_MEM_VER

Byte 3: High-Byte of Version

Byte 4: Low-Byte of Version

Byte 5: HCONFIG

Byte 6: HCONFIG2

Byte 7: Q

Byte 8: QH

sFirstUsed Register (136h)

This register contains a mirror of the value stored in nonvolatile memory address 1D7h.

sCell1 Register (13Fh)

This register contains the same cell voltage information displayed in Cell1 (0D8h) respectively with SBS compliant formatting. 1 LSb = 1mV, which gives a full scale range of 0V to 65.535V.

sAvgCell1 Register (14Fh)

This register contains the same average cell voltage information displayed in AvgCell1 (0D4h) with SBS compliant formatting. 1 LSb = 1mV, which gives a full scale range of 0V to 65.535V.

sAvCap Register (167h)

This register contains the same information as the AvCap (01Fh) register. It is formatted for SBS compliance where 1 LSb = 1mAh, which gives a full scale range of 0mAh to 65535mAh.

sMixCap Register (168h)

This register contains the same information as the MixCap (00Fh) register. It is formatted for SBS compliance where 1 LSb = 1mAh, which gives a full scale range of 0mAh to 65535mAh.

sManfctInfo Register (170h)

The sManfctInfo register is accessed using the SBS protocol read block command. This register function is not supported in the MAX17330.

Nonvolatile SBS Register Back-Up

When SBS mode operation is enabled by setting nNVCfg0.enSBS = 1, data from several nonvolatile memory locations are translated into SBS memory space. Table 121 lists these translations. Note that when performing an SBS Read Block command, the IC automatically generates the size data byte by counting the number of sequential non-zero data bytes stored in the corresponding nonvolatile memory locations. The nonvolatile memory only needs to store the actual data to be read by an SBS Read Block command. If the SBS mode of operation is disabled, these locations become available for general purpose nonvolatile data storage.

Table 121. SBS to Nonvolatile Memory Mapping

NONVOLATILE MEMORY ADDRESS	NONVOLATILE MEMORY REGISTER NAME	SBS MEMORY ADDRESS	S REGISTER NAME
1D6h	nManfctrDate	1Bh	sManfctrDate
1D7h	nFirstUsed	36h	sFirstUsed
1CCh-1CEh	nManfctrName[2:0]	20h (Read Block Command)	sManfctrName
1D8h-1DAh	nSerialNumber[2:0]	1Ch (Read Block Command)	sSerialNumber
1DBh-1DFh	nDeviceName[4:0]	21h (Read Block Command)	sDeviceName

nCGain and Sense Resistor Relationship

To meet SBS compliance, current and capacity registers in the SBS memory space must have an LSb bit weight of 1mA or 1mAh. The current gain must be adjusted based on the application sense resistor value to set the proper bit weight. Table 122 shows the proper nCGain value to use for the most common sense resistor values. This is the default register value only, it does not include any offset trim or custom gain adjustment. Note that changing the nCGain register affects the gain reported by the standard ModelGauge current and capacity registers.

Table 122. nCGain Register Settings to Meet SBS Compliance

SENSE RESISTOR VALUE (mΩ)	NCGAIN REGISTER VALUE	CORRESPONDING CGAIN REGISTER VALUE
2.5	0x4000	0x0400
5	0x2000	0x0200
10	0x1000	0x0100

Dynamic Battery Power Technology (DBPT) Registers

Many mobile systems with high-performance CPUs, GPUs, motors, radios, etc., require the battery to deliver short pulses of high power without the battery voltage falling below critical system undervoltage levels. Managing these pulse loads optimally without sacrificing performance is quite challenging without appropriate battery capability information being available to the system.

To achieve better run-time and to help the system run at optimal performance, Analog Devices has developed Dynamic Battery Power Technology (DBPT). The MAX17330 supports this DBPT feature, which provides the on-demand battery capability to be used for managing pulse loads. To support these high pulses without the battery voltage falling below critical system undervoltage levels, the MAX17330 indicates the instantaneous peak and sustained power levels that can be extracted safely from the battery. The system can use this information to set its maximum current in accordance with battery power capability. For example, in many applications, the system requires at least 3.3V to operate correctly. By configuring the MAX17330 for DBPT, the system's loads can be controlled or limited to stay within the battery's capability and ensure that a minimum system voltage (MinSysVolt) is not crossed until the battery is in a very low state.

The implementation of DBPT in the MAX17330 hews closely to Intel's Dynamic Battery Power Technology v2.0 standard and relies on specific functions and corresponding registers. This section defines those functions. The implementation in the MAX17330 includes all the same registers as the Intel spec. However, the MAX17330 register set uses different LSBs and addresses from the Intel standard.

The following registers are used for DBPT. The MAX17330 uses the standard current register format (0.15625µV/Sense Resistor) for current, 0.8mW for power, and 0.2441mΩ (precisely 1/4.096) for resistance.

MaxPeakPower Register (0A4h)

Specification Description:

The fuel gauge computes and returns the maximum instantaneous peak output power of the battery pack in cW, which is available for up to 10ms, given the external resistance and required minimum system voltage. The MaxPeakPower value is expected to be negative and is updated every 351mS. MaxPeakPower is initialized to the present value of MaxPeakPower on reset or power-up.

The system designer should limit the actual maximum peak power to account for various system limitations, such as limiting the cell discharge current to the 2C rate and allowing for the safe operating area specifications for devices in the power path, such as MOSFETs.

LSB is 0.8mW.

Actual Calculation:

MaxPeakPower = MPPCurrent x AvgVCell

SusPeakPower Register (0A5h)

Specification Description:

The fuel gauge computes and returns the sustained peak output power of the battery pack in cW, which is available for up to 10s, given the external resistance and required minimum voltage of the voltage regulator. The SusPeakPower value is expected to be negative and is updated every 351mS. SusPeakPower is initialized to the present value of SusPeakPower on reset or power-up.

The system designer should limit the actual sustained peak power to account for various system limitations, such as limiting the cell discharge current to the 2C rate and allowing for the safe operating area specifications for devices in the power path, such as MOSFETs.

LSB is 0.8mW.

Actual Calculation:

SusPeakPower = SPPCurrent x AvgVCell

sPackResistance (0A6h) and nPackResistance (1C5h)

Specification Description:

This function reports the total noncell pack resistance value to account for the resistances due to cell interconnect, sense resistor, FET, fuse, connector, and other impedances between the cells and output of the battery pack. The cell internal resistance should NOT be included. PackResistance is set at time of pack manufacture. Writes to this value do not affect the value during normal operation. This value is usually determined by the battery pack manufacturer and set at time of pack manufacture.

The pack-maker can configure PackResistance by programming the nonvolatile nPackResistance during production.

LSB of 1mΩ per LSB.

SysResistance (0A7h)

Specification Description:

The SysResitance register configures the total resistance value into fuel gauge to account for the resistances due to the resistance of power/ground metal, sense resistor, FET, and other parasitic resistance on the system main board. SysResistance is initialized to a default value of 0mΩ. The system designer is expected to overwrite the default value with the value from the system in question. This allows a single pack to be used in multiple systems which can have various values for SysResistance.

LSB of 0.2441mΩ per LSB

MinSysVoltage() (0A8h)

Specification Description:

The MinSysVoltage register configures the required minimum system input voltage in mV into the fuel gauge. The system regulator still operates normally if its input voltage is at this level. MinSysVoltage is initialized to a default value from the upper byte of the nDesignVoltage register at power up. Table 114 shows the register format for nDesignVoltage.

The system designer can write the MinSysVoltage register directly during normal operation to change from the default setting. This allows a single pack to be used in multiple systems, which may have various values for MinSysVoltage.

Writing MinSysVoltage above or below the empty point should not change the empty point. However, calculations for MPPCurrent, SPPCurrent, MaxPeakPower, and SusPeakPower reports 0x0000 when VCell is less than the MinSysVoltage.

For accurate performance, the system should normally update MinSysVoltage according to its requirements.

MPPCurrent (0A9h)

Register Type: Current

Specification Description:

The fuel gauge computes and returns the maximum instantaneous peak current of the battery pack in the standard current register format, which is available for up to 10ms, given the external resistance and required minimum voltage of the voltage regulator. The MPPCurrent value is expected to be negative and has to be updated at least once every second. MPPCurrent is initialized to the present value of MPPCurrent on reset or power-up.

Actual Calculation:

MPPCurrent = (AvgVCell - MinSySVoltage) / [(PackResistance + SysResistance) x Rgain1]

SPPCurrent (0AAh)

Register Type: Current

Specification Description:

The fuel gauge computes and returns the sustained peak current of the battery pack in the standard current register format, which is available for up to 10s, given the external resistance and required minimum system voltage. The SPPCurrent value is expected to be negative and has to be updated at least once every second. SPPCurrent is initialized to the present value of SPPCurrent on reset or power-up.

Actual Calculation:

SPPCurrent = (AvgVCell - MinSySVoltage) / (RCell x Rgain2)

SHA-256 Authentication

The MAX17330 supports authentication which is performed using a FIPS 180-4 compliant SHA-256 one-way hash algorithm on a 512-bit message block. The message block consists of a 160-bit secret, a 160-bit challenge, and 192 bits of constant data. Optionally, the 64-bit ROM ID replaces 64 of the 192 bits of constant data used in the hash operation. Contact Analog Devices for details of the message block organization.

The host and the IC both calculate the result based on the mutually known secret. The result of the hash operation is known as the message authentication code (MAC) or message digest. The MAC is returned by the IC for comparison to the host's MAC. Note that the secret is never transmitted on the bus and thus cannot be captured by observing bus traffic. Each authentication attempt is initiated by the host system by writing a 160-bit random challenge into the SHA memory address space 0C0h to 0C9h. The host then issues the compute MAC or compute MAC with ROM ID command. The MAC is computed per FIPS 180-4 and stored in address space 0C0h to 0CFh, overwriting the challenge value.

The MAX17330 also provides a 2-stage authentication scheme that utilizes a temporary secret.

Note that the results of the authentication attempt are determined by host verification. Operation of the IC is not affected by authentication success or failure.

Authentication Procedure

Figure 27 shows how a host system verifies the authenticity of a connected battery. The host first generates a random 160-bit challenge value and writes the challenge to IC memory space 0C0h to 0C9h. The host then sends the Compute MAC with ROM ID (3500h) or Compute MAC without ROM ID (3600h) to the Command register 060h and waits t_{SHA} for computation to complete. Finally, the host reads the MAC from memory space 0C0h to 0CFh to verify the result. This procedure requires the secret to be maintained on the host side as well as in the battery. The host must perform the same calculations in parallel to verify that the battery is authentic.

Procedure to Verify a Battery

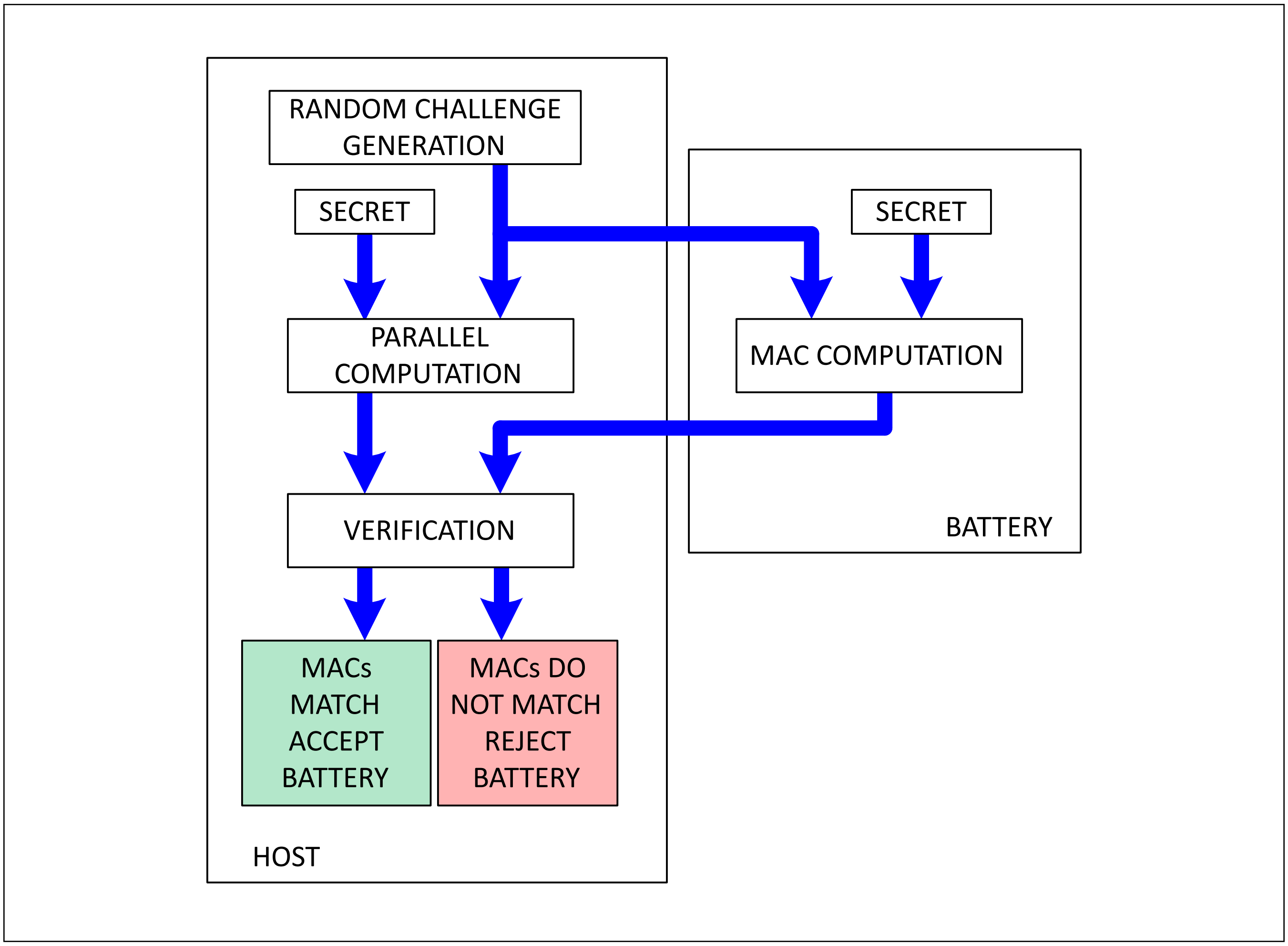


Figure 27. Procedure to Verify a Battery

Alternate Authentication Procedure

Figure 28 shows an alternative method of battery authentication that does not require the host to know the secret. In this method, each host device knows a challenge and MAC pair that matches the secret stored in an authentic battery, but each host device uses a different pair. This eliminates the need for special hardware on the host side to protect the secret from hardware intrusion. A battery could be cloned for a single host device, but creating a clone battery that works with any host would not be possible without knowing the secret.

The authentication process for this method is less complex. The host simply writes the challenge to IC memory space 0C0h to 0C9h. The host then sends the Compute MAC without ROM ID (3600h) command to the Command register 060h. Note that the Compute MAC with ROM ID command is not valid for this authentication method. The host then waits t_{SHA} for the computation to complete and reads the MAC from memory space 0C0h to 0CFh to verify the result.

Battery Authentication without a Host Side Secret

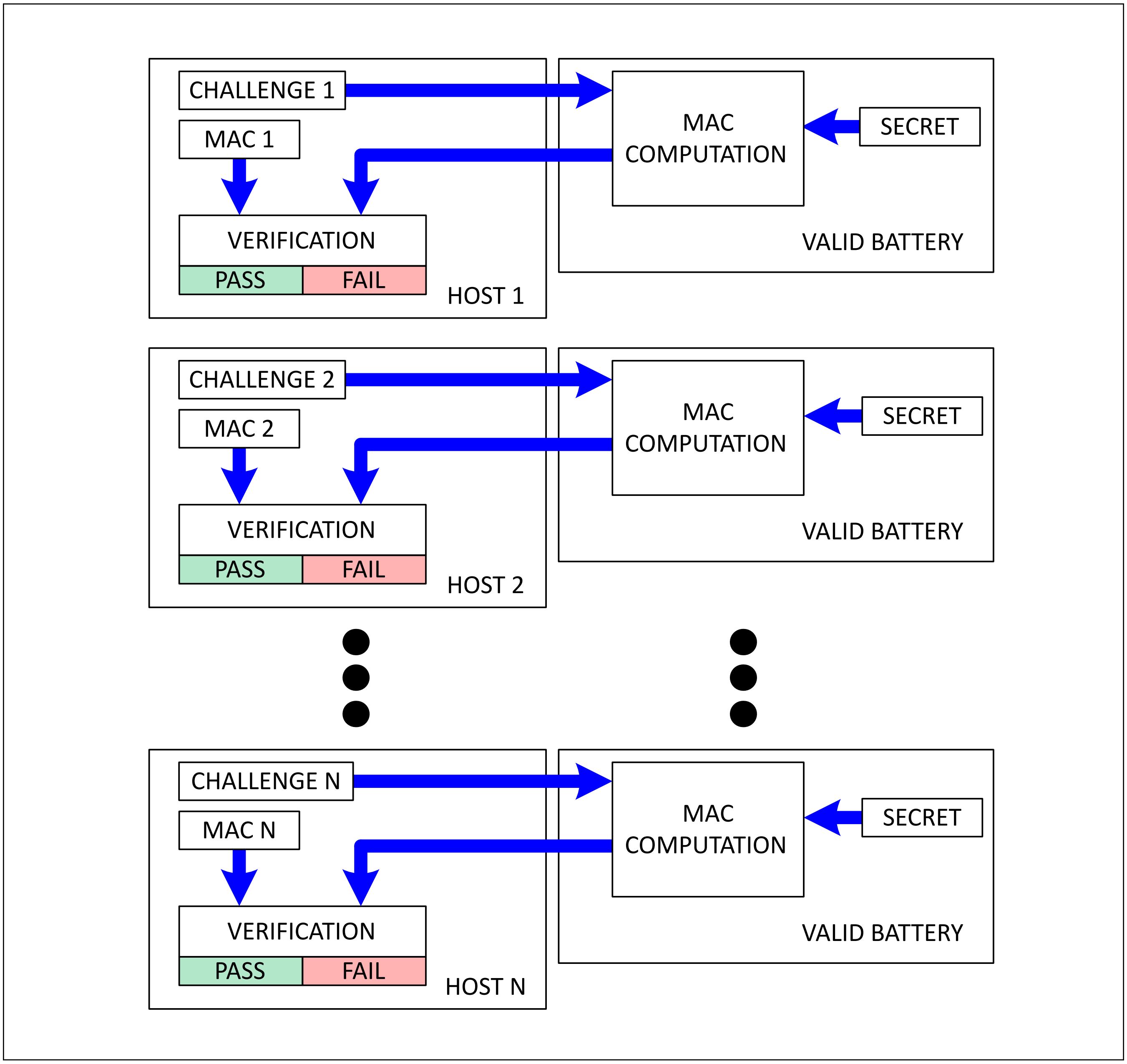


Figure 28. Battery Authentication without a Host Side Secret

Secret Management

The secret value must be programmed to a known value before performing authentication in the application. The secret cannot be written directly. Instead, the user must generate a new internal secret by performing a SHA computation with the old internal secret and a seed value sent as a challenge. To prevent any one entity from knowing the complete secret value, the process can be repeated multiple times by sending additional challenge seeds and performing additional computations.

Note that programming the Secret should be done at the factory before connecting the battery as 5.5V is required at the BATT pin of the IC to update the Secret in NVM.

Note that secret memory can only be changed a maximum of n_{SECRET} times including erase operations, and nonvolatile memory updates are not guaranteed. See the n_{SECRET} write limit in the *Electrical Characteristics* table. Any secret update operation that fails does not change the secret value stored in the IC but consumes one of the available limited updates. Be careful not to use up all secret memory during the generation process. Maxim Integrated strongly recommends permanently locking the secret after it has been generated.

Single-Step Secret Generation

The single-step secret generation procedure should be used in production environments where the challenge seed value can be kept confidential, for example when there are no OEM manufacturing steps or situations where an outside individual or organization would need to know the challenge seed. Use the following sequence to program the IC. Since the secret cannot be read from the IC, a parallel computation must be performed externally to calculate the stored secret. Figure 29 shows an example of a single-step secret generation operation. Note that new units have their secret value already cleared to all 0s. Also note that programming the Secret should be done at the factory before connecting the battery as 5.5V is required at the BATT pin of the IC to update the Secret in NVM.

1. Clear the CommStat.NVError bit.
2. Write a challenge seed value to the SHA memory space 0C0h to 0C9h.
3. Write Compute Next Secret with ROM ID 3300h or Compute Next Secret without ROM ID 3000h to the Command register 060h.
4. Wait t_{SHA} + t_{UPDATE} for the computation to complete and the new secret to be stored.
5. If CommStat.NVError is set, return to step 1; otherwise, continue.
6. Verify that the secret has been generated correctly with a test challenge at this time. If verification fails, return to step 1. See the *Determining Number of Remaining Updates* section to verify that enough nonvolatile memory writes remain to repeat the process.
7. Write Lock Secret 6000h to the Command register 060h. **Note that this operation cannot be reversed.**
8. Wait t_{UPDATE} for the secret to lock permanently.

Single-Step Secret Generation Example

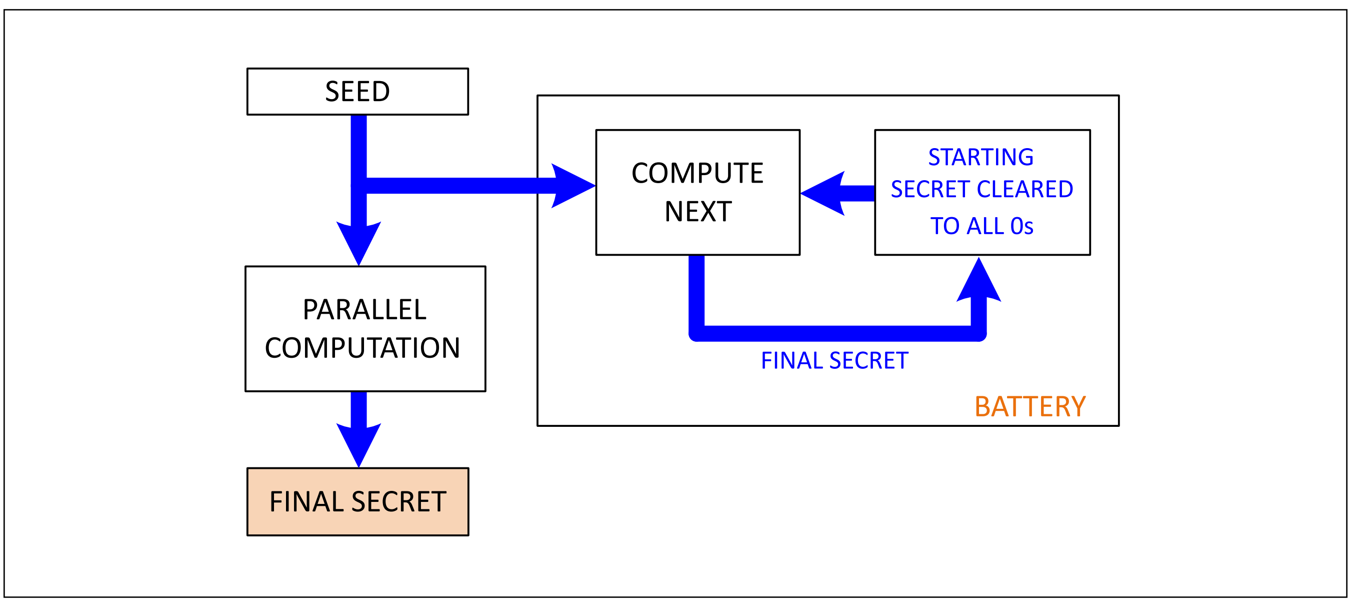


Figure 29. Single-Step Secret Generation Example

Multi-Step Secret Generation Procedure

The multi-step secret generation procedure should be used in environments where an outside individual or organization would need to know the challenge seed such as OEM manufacturing. The multi-step procedure is more complicated but allows a secret to be stored inside the IC without providing any information to an OEM that could jeopardize secret integrity. Figure 30 shows an example where three OEMs are each provided with a seed value for a Compute Next operation. The final secret value stored inside the IC is known only to the top-level manager who knows all seed values and has performed the computation separately. Use the following procedures when generating a multi-step secret. Note that the secret can only be updated or cleared n_{SECRET} times total. New units have their secret value already cleared to all 0s. Also, note that programming the Secret should be done at the factory before connecting the battery as 5.5V is required at the BATT pin of the IC to update the Secret in NVM.

All OEMs:

1. Clear the CommStat.NVError bit.
2. Write challenge seed value to the SHA memory space 0C0h to 0C9h.
3. Write Compute Next Secret with ROM ID 3300h or Compute Next Secret without ROM ID 3000h to the Command register 060h.
4. Wait t_{SHA} + t_{UPDATE} for the computation to complete and the new secret to be stored.
5. If CommStat.NVError is set, return to step 1; otherwise, continue.
6. Verify that the secret has been generated correctly with a test challenge at this time. If verification fails, return to step 1. See the *Determining Number of Remaining Updates* section to verify that enough nonvolatile memory writes remain to repeat the process.

Last OEM:

1. Follow the previous procedure for the final secret update.
2. Write Lock Secret 6000h to the Command register 060h. **Note that this operation cannot be reversed.**
3. Wait t_{UPDATE} for the secret to lock permanently.

Top Level:

1. Generate all seed values to provide to OEMs.
2. Perform SHA calculations separately to determine what the final secret is after all manufacturing steps.
3. Keep the final secret value secure.

Multi-Step Secret Generation Example

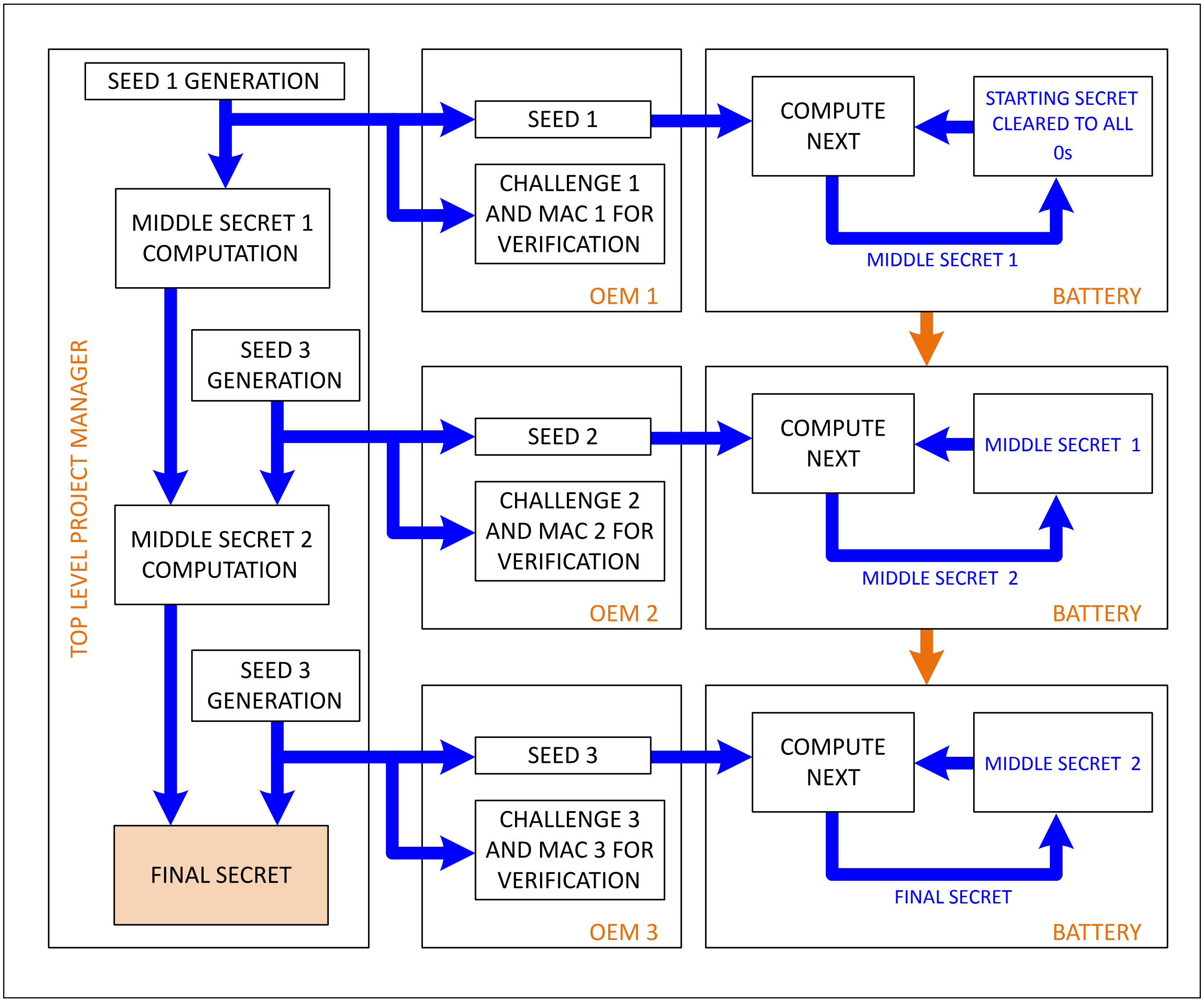


Figure 30. Multi-Step Secret Generation Example

2-Stage Authentication Scheme

The MAX17330 provides a 2-stage authentication scheme that utilizes a temporary secret for an added layer of security. Figure 31 illustrates how to create a unique intermediate secret that can be stored in the host at the factory. Figure 32 outlines the procedure to complete the 2-stage authentication.

The following procedure implements the 2-stage authentication scheme:

1. Write Copy Temporary Secret from NVM command 3800h to the Command register 060h.
2. Write unique challenge seed value to the SHA memory space 0C0h to 0C9h to be used to compute the next temporary secret.
3. Write Compute Next Temporary Secret with ROM ID 3900h or Compute Next Temporary Secret without ROM ID 3A00h to the Command register 060h.
4. Wait t_{SHA} for the computation to complete.

5. Write challenge seed value to the SHA memory space 0C0h to 0C9h to be used to compute the MAC using the temporary secret.
6. Write Compute MAC From Temporary Secret with ROM ID 3D00h or Compute MAC From Temporary Secret without ROM ID 3C00h to the Command register 060h.
7. Wait t_{SHA} for the computation to complete.
8. Read the MAC from SHA memory space 0C0h to 0CFh to verify the result.

Because the temporary secret is stored in the same RAM location used for SHA calculation, executing some commands overwrites the temporary secret. The functional impact is summarized as follows.

- Compute MAC and Compute Next Secret commands overwrite the temporary secret.
- Copy temporary secret from NVM overwrites the temporary secret (as expected).
- Compute MAC from temporary secret also overwrites the temporary secret. If a temporary secret is used for multiple MAC calculations, the temporary secret needs to be reconstructed after each MAC computation.

Create a Unique Intermediate Secret

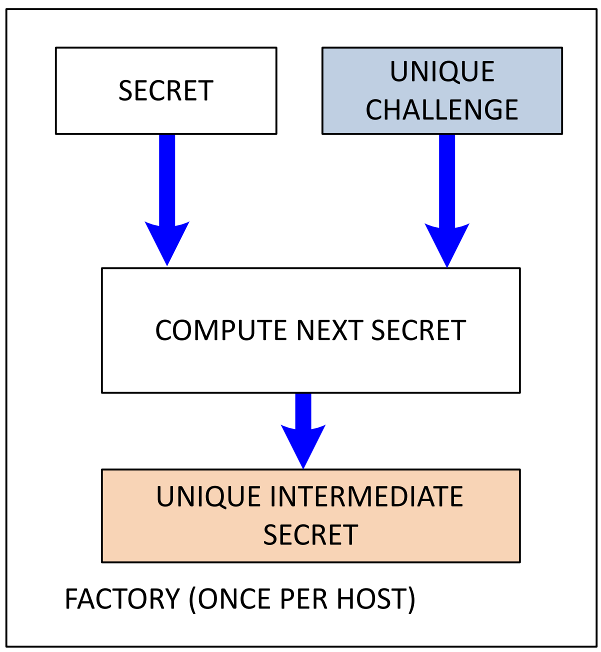


Figure 31. Create a Unique Intermediate Secret

Procedure for 2-Stage Authentication

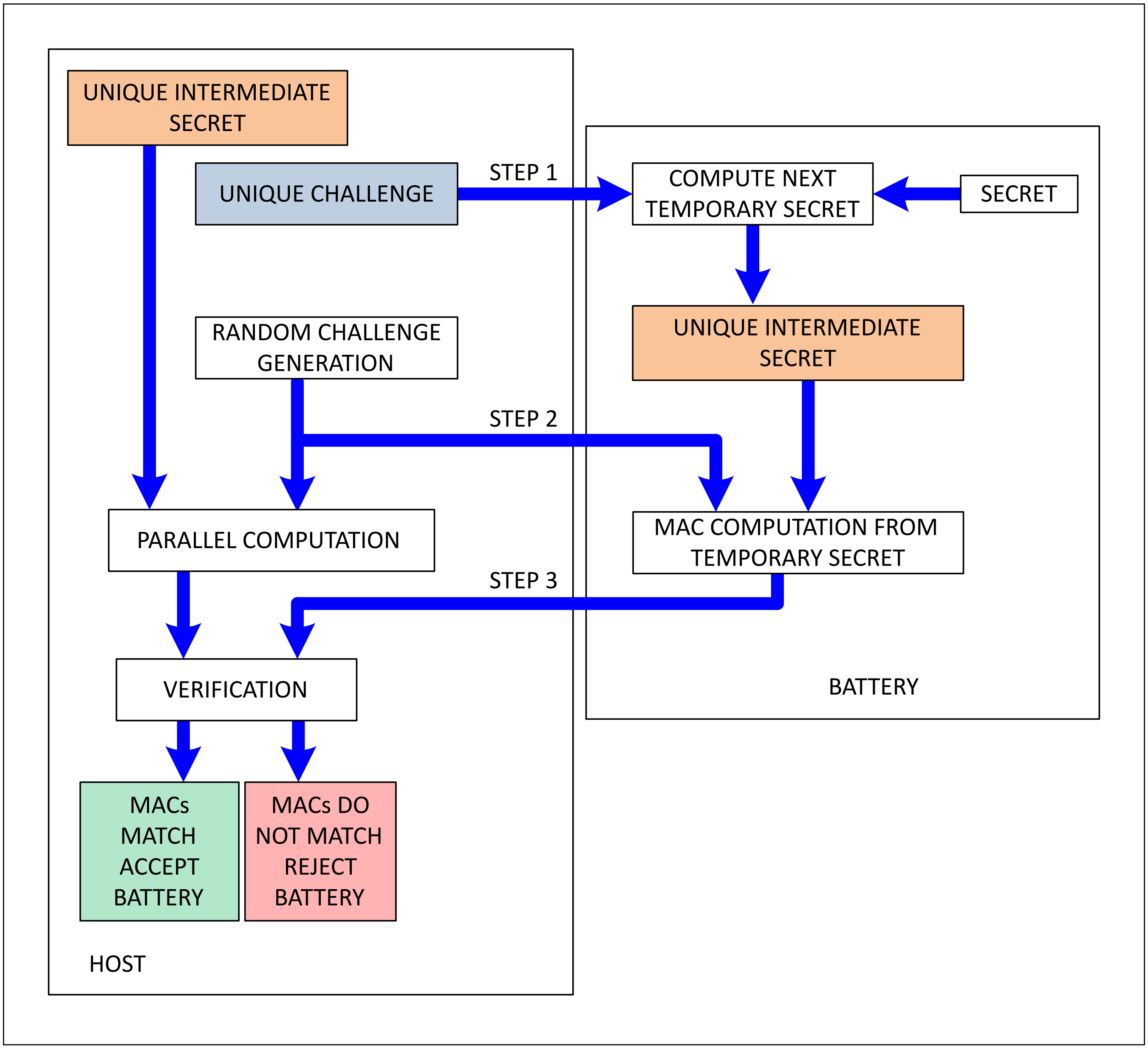


Figure 32. Procedure for 2-Stage Authentication

Determining Number of Remaining Updates

The internal secret can only be updated or cleared n_{SECRET} times total. The number of remaining updates can be calculated using the following procedure:

1. Write 0xE29D to the Command register (060h).
2. Wait t_{RECALL}.
3. Read memory address 1FDh.
4. Decode address 1FDh data as shown in Table 123. Each secret update has redundant indicator flags for reliability.

Logically OR the upper and lower bytes together, then count the number of 1s to determine how many updates have already been used. The first update occurs in a manufacturing test to clear the secret memory before shipping to the user.

Table 123. Number of Remaining Secret Updates

ADDRESS 0E6H DATA	LOGICAL OR OF UPPER AND LOWER BYTES	NUMBER OF UPDATES USED	NUMBER OF UPDATES REMAINING
0000000x00000001b or 000000010000000xb	00000001b	1	5
000000xx0000001xb or 0000001x000000xxb	00000011b	2	4
00000xxx000001xxb or 000001xx00000xxxb	00000111b	3	3
0000xxxx00001xxxb or 00001xxx0000xxxxb	00001111b	4	2
000xxxxx0001xxxxb or 0001xxxx000xxxxxb	00011111b	5	1
00xxxxxx001xxxxxb or 001xxxxx00xxxxxxb	00111111b	6	0

Authentication Commands

All SHA authentication commands are written to memory address 060h to perform the desired operation. Writing the challenge or reading the MAC is handled by accessing the SHA memory space on page 0Ch through direct read and write operations.

COMPUTE MAC WITHOUT ROM ID [3600h]

The challenge value must be written to the SHA memory space before performing a Compute MAC command. This command initiates a SHA-256 computation without including the ROM ID in the message block. Instead, the ROM ID portion of the message block is replaced with a value of all 1s. Since the ROM ID is not used, this command allows the use of a master secret and MAC response independent of the ROM ID. The IC computes the MAC in t_{SHA} after receiving the last bit of this command. After the MAC computation is complete, the host can read the MAC from the SHA memory space.

COMPUTE MAC WITH ROM ID [3500h]

The challenge value must be written to the SHA memory space before performing a Compute MAC command. This command is structured the same as the compute MAC without ROM ID, except that the ROM ID is included in the message block. With the unique ROM ID included in the MAC computation, the MAC is unique to each unit. After the MAC computation is complete, the host can read the MAC from the SHA memory space.

COMPUTE NEXT SECRET WITHOUT ROM ID [3000h]

This command initiates a SHA-256 computation and uses the resulting MAC as the next or new secret. The hash operation is performed with the current 160-bit secret and the new 160-bit challenge. Logical 1s are loaded in place of the ROM ID. The last 160 bits of the MAC are used as the new secret value. The host must allow t_{SHA} after issuing this command for the SHA calculation to complete, then wait t_{UPDATE} for the new secret value to be stored in nonvolatile memory. During this operation, the SHA memory space is not updated. Note that the old secret value must be known before executing this command to calculate what the new secret value is. Also, note that programming the Secret should be done at the factory before connecting the battery as 5.5V is required at the BATT pin of the IC to update the Secret in NVM.

COMPUTE NEXT SECRET WITH ROM ID [3300h]

This command initiates a SHA-256 computation and uses the resulting MAC as the next or new secret. The hash operation is performed with the current 160-bit secret, the 64-bit ROM ID, and the new 160-bit challenge. The last 160 bits of the output MAC are used as the new secret value. The host must allow t_{SHA} after issuing this command for the SHA calculation to complete, then wait t_{UPDATE} for the new secret value to be stored in nonvolatile memory. During this operation, the SHA memory space is not updated. Note that the old secret value must be known before executing this command to calculate what the new secret value is. Also, note that programming the Secret should be done at the factory before connecting the battery as 5.5V is required at the BATT pin of the IC to update the Secret in NVM.

CLEAR SECRET [5A00h]

This command sets the 160-bit secret to all 0s. The host must wait t_{UPDATE} for the IC to write the new secret value to nonvolatile memory. This command uses up one of the secret write cycles.

LOCK SECRET [6000h]

This command write protects the secret preventing accidental or malicious overwrite of the secret value. The secret value stored in nonvolatile memory becomes permanent. The host must wait t_{UPDATE} for the lock operation to complete.

SHA-256 Lock state is not shown in the Lock register. The lock state can be verified by reading nonvolatile memory history using the following sequence:

1. Send 0xE29B to the Command register (060h).
2. Wait for t_{RECALL}.
3. Read memory address 1FCh.

If address 1FCh is 0x0000, then the secret is not locked. If address 1FCh is anything other than 0x0000, then the secret is permanently locked.

COPY TEMPORARY SECRET FROM NVM [3800]

This command copies the secret from NVM and places it in RAM to allow the secret to be used by the other commands.

COMPUTE NEXT TEMPORARY SECRET WITH ROMID [3900]

This command is similar to COMPUTE NEXT SECRET WITH ROMID except the secret used in the computation comes from the previously executed COPY TEMPORARY SECRET FROM NVM or COMPUTE NEXT TEMPORARY SECRET WITH/WITHOUT ROMID and the next secret is placed in RAM so it can be used in subsequent commands.

COMPUTE NEXT TEMPORARY SECRET WITHOUT ROMID [3A00]

This command is similar to COMPUTE NEXT SECRET WITHOUT ROMID except the secret used in the computation comes from the previously executed COPY TEMPORARY SECRET FROM NVM or COMPUTE NEXT TEMPORARY SECRET WITH/WITHOUT ROMID and the next secret is placed in RAM so it can be used in subsequent commands.

COMPUTE MAC FROM TEMPORARY SECRET WITHOUT ROMID [3C00]

This command is the same as COMPUTE MAC WITHOUT ROMID except the secret used in the computation comes from the previously executed COPY TEMPORARY SECRET FROM NVM or COMPUTE NEXT TEMPORARY SECRET WITH/WITHOUT ROMID.

COMPUTE MAC FROM TEMPORARY SECRET WITH ROMID [3D00]

This command is the same as COMPUTE MAC WITH ROMID except the secret used in the computation comes from the previously executed COPY TEMPORARY SECRET FROM NVM or COMPUTE NEXT TEMPORARY SECRET WITH/WITHOUT ROMID.

Device Reset

There are two different levels of reset for the IC; a full reset restores the IC to its power-up state (the same as if power had been cycled) and a fuel-gauge reset resets only the fuel gauge operation without resetting IC hardware. This is useful for testing different configurations without writing to nonvolatile memory. Use the following sequences to reset the IC.

FULL RESET

1. Reset IC hardware by writing 000Fh to the Command register at 060h.
2. Wait 10ms.
3. Reset IC fuel gauge operation by writing 8000h to the Config2 register at 0ABh. This command does not disturb the state of the protection FETs.
4. Wait for the POR_CMD bit (bit 15) of the Config2 register to be cleared to indicate that the POR sequence is complete.

FUEL-GAUGE RESET

1. Reset IC fuel gauge operation by writing 8000h to the Config2 register at 0ABh. This command does not disturb the state of the protection FETs.
2. Wait for the POR_CMD bit (bit 15) of the Config2 register to be cleared to indicate that the POR sequence is complete.

Reset Commands

There are two commands that can be used to reset either the entire IC or just the operation of the fuel gauge, protection, and charging configuration without interrupting the hardware (CHG, DIS FETs, or Non-Volatile Shadow Memory). Note that the configuration reset command is written to Config2 instead of the Command register.

HARDWARE RESET [000Fh to address 060h]

Send the hardware reset command to the Command register to recall all nonvolatile memory into shadow RAM and reset all hardware-based operations of the IC. This command should always be followed by the reset fuel gauge command to fully reset operation of the IC.

CONFIGURATION RESET [8000h to address 0ABh]

The Configuration Reset command resets operation of the IC without restoring nonvolatile memory values into shadow RAM or resetting the FET Control. This command allows different configurations to be tested without using one of the limited numbers of nonvolatile memory writes. This command does not disturb the state of the protection FETs.

Summary of Commands

Any operation other than reading or writing a memory location is executed by writing the appropriate command to the Command or Config2 registers. Table 124 lists all function commands understood by the MAX17330. The function command must be written to the Command (060h) or Config2 (0ABh) registers. Device commands are described in detail in the *Authentication*, *Nonvolatile Memory*, *Reset*, and *Power Up* sections of the data sheet.

Table 124. All Function Commands

COMMAND	TYPE	REGISTER	HEX	DESCRIPTION
Compute MAC *Without* ROM ID	SHA	060h	3600h	Computes hash operation of the message block with logical 1s in place of the ROM ID.
Compute MAC *With* ROM ID	SHA	060h	3500h	Computes hash operation of the message block including the ROM ID.
Compute Next Secret *Without* ROM ID	SHA	060h	3000h	Computes hash operation of the message block with logical 1s in place of the ROM ID. The result is then stored as the new secret.
Compute Next Secret *With* ROM ID	SHA	060h	3300h	Computes hash operation of the message block including the ROM ID. The result is then stored as the new secret.
Clear Secret	SHA	060h	5A00h	Resets the SHA-256 secret to a value of all 0s.
Lock Secret	SHA	060h	6000h	Permanently locks the SHA-256 secret.
Copy NV Block	Memory	060h	E904h	Copies all shadow RAM locations to nonvolatile memory at the same time.
NV Recall	Memory	060h	E001h	Recalls all nonvolatile memory to RAM.

Table 124. All Function Commands (continued)

COMMAND	TYPE	REGISTER	HEX	DESCRIPTION
History Recall	Memory	060h	E2XXh	Recalls a page of nonvolatile memory history into RAM page 1Eh.
NV Lock	Memory	060h	6AXXh	Permanently locks an area of memory. See the Memory Locks section for details.
Hardware Reset	Reset	060h	000Fh	Recalls nonvolatile memory into RAM and resets the IC hardware. Fuel gauge operation is not reset.
Fuel Gauge Reset	Reset	0ABh	8000h	Restarts the fuel gauge operation without affecting nonvolatile shadow RAM settings.

Communication

2-Wire Bus System

The uses a 2-Wire bus system to communicate by both standard I2C protocol or by SBS smart battery protocol. The slave address used by the host to access the IC determines which protocol is used and what memory locations are available to read or write. The following description applies to both protocols. See the I2C and SBS Bus System descriptions for specific protocol details.

Hardware Configuration

The 2-Wire bus system supports operation as a slave-only device in a single or multi-slave, and single or multi-master system. Up to 128 slave devices can share the bus using 7-bit slave addresses. The 2-Wire interface consists of a serial data line (SDA) and serial clock line (SCL). SDA and SCL provide bidirectional communication between the IC and a master device at speeds up to 400kHz. The IC's SDA pin operates bidirectionally. When the IC receives data, the SDA operates as an input. When the IC returns data, the SDA operates as an open-drain output with the host system providing a resistive pullup. See Figure 33. The IC always operates as a slave device, receiving and transmitting data under the control of a master device. The master initiates all transactions on the bus and generates the SCL signal, as well as the START and STOP bits which begin and end each transaction.

2-Wire Bus Interface Circuitry

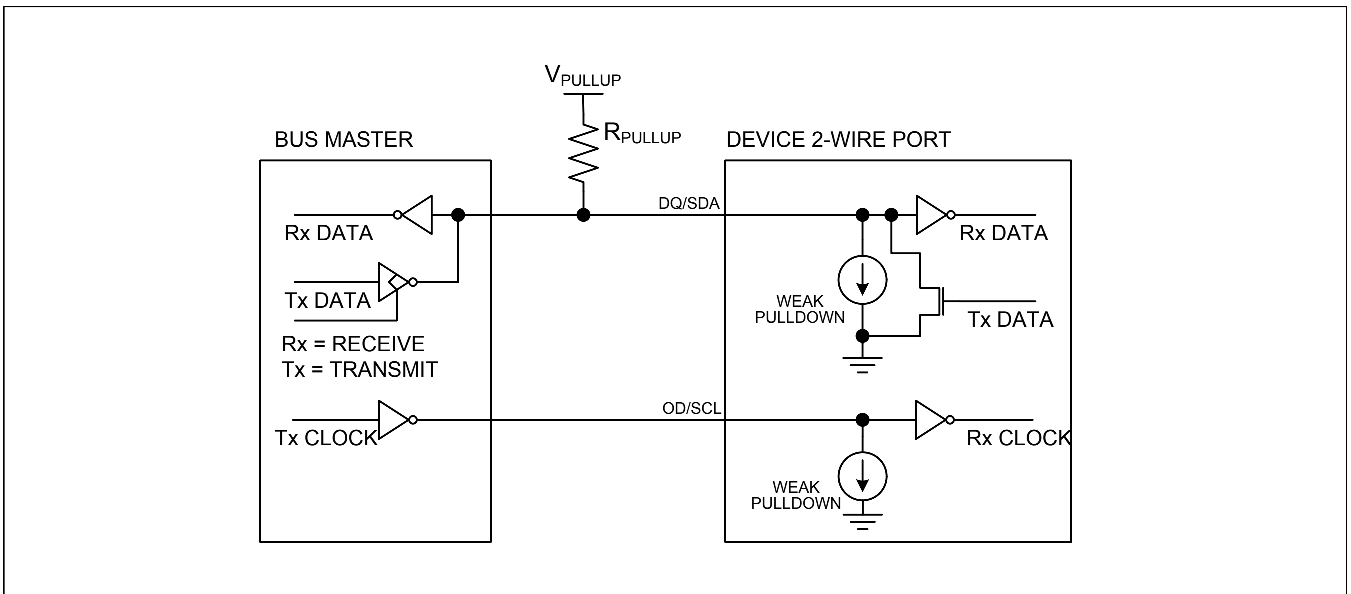


Figure 33. 2-Wire Bus Interface Circuitry

I/O Signaling

The following individual signals are used to build byte level 2-Wire communication sequences.

Bit Transfer

One data bit is transferred during each SCL clock cycle, with the cycle defined by SCL transitioning low to high and then high to low. The SDA logic level must remain stable during the high period of the SCL clock pulse. Any change in SDA when SCL is high is interpreted as a START or STOP control signal.

Bus Idle

The bus is defined to be idle (i.e., not busy) when no master device has control. Both SDA and SCL remain high when the bus is idle. The STOP condition is the proper method to return the bus to the idle state.

START and STOP Conditions

The master initiates transactions with a START condition by forcing a high-to-low transition on SDA while SCL is high. The master terminates a transaction with a STOP condition by a low-to-high transition on SDA while SCL is high. A Repeated START condition can be used in place of a STOP then START sequence to terminate one transaction and begin another without returning the bus to the idle state. In multi-master systems, a Repeated START allows the master to retain control of the bus. The START and STOP conditions are the only bus activities in which the SDA transitions when SCL is high.

Acknowledge Bits

Each byte of a data transfer is acknowledged with an Acknowledge bit (ACK) or a No Acknowledge bit (NACK). Both the master and the IC slave generate acknowledge bits. To generate an Acknowledge, the receiving device must pull SDA low before the rising edge of the acknowledge-related clock pulse (ninth pulse) and keep it low until SCL returns low. To generate a No Acknowledge, the receiver releases SDA before the rising edge of the acknowledge-related clock pulse and leaves SDA high until SCL returns low. Monitoring the acknowledge bits allows for the detection of unsuccessful data transfers. An unsuccessful data transfer can occur if a receiving device is busy or if a system fault has occurred. In the event of an unsuccessful data transfer, the bus master should reattempt communication. If a transaction is aborted mid-byte, the master should send additional clock pulses to force the slave IC to free the bus before restarting communication.

Data Order

With 2-Wire communication, a byte of data consists of 8 bits ordered most significant bit (MSb) first. The least significant bit (LSb) of each byte is followed by the Acknowledge bit. IC registers composed of multibyte values are ordered least significant byte (LSB) first.

Slave Address

A bus master initiates communication with a slave device by issuing a START condition followed by a Slave Address and the read/write (R/W) bit. When the bus is idle, the IC continuously monitors for a START condition followed by its slave address. When the IC receives a slave address that matches its Slave Address, it responds with an Acknowledge bit during the clock period following the R/W bit. The supports the slave addresses shown in Table 125. **Note:** The addresses shown in Table 125 are 8-bit slave addresses.

Table 125. 2-Wire Slave Addresses

SLAVE ADDRESS	PROTOCOL	ADDRESS BYTE RANGE	INTERNAL MEMORY RANGE ACCESSED
6Ch	I^2C	00h to FFh	000h to 0FFh
16h	SMBUS™	00h to 7Fh	100h to 17Fh
	I^2C	80h to FFh	180h to 1FFh

Read/Write Bit

The R/W bit following the slave address determines the data direction of subsequent bytes in the transfer. R/W = 0 selects a write transaction, with the following bytes being written by the master to the slave. R/W = 1 selects a read transaction, with the following bytes being read from the slave by the master.

Bus Timing

The IC is compatible with any bus timing up to 400kHz. See the *Electrical Characteristics* table for timing details. No special configuration is required to operate at any speed. Figure 34 shows an example of standard 2-Wire bus timing.

2-Wire Bus Timing Diagram

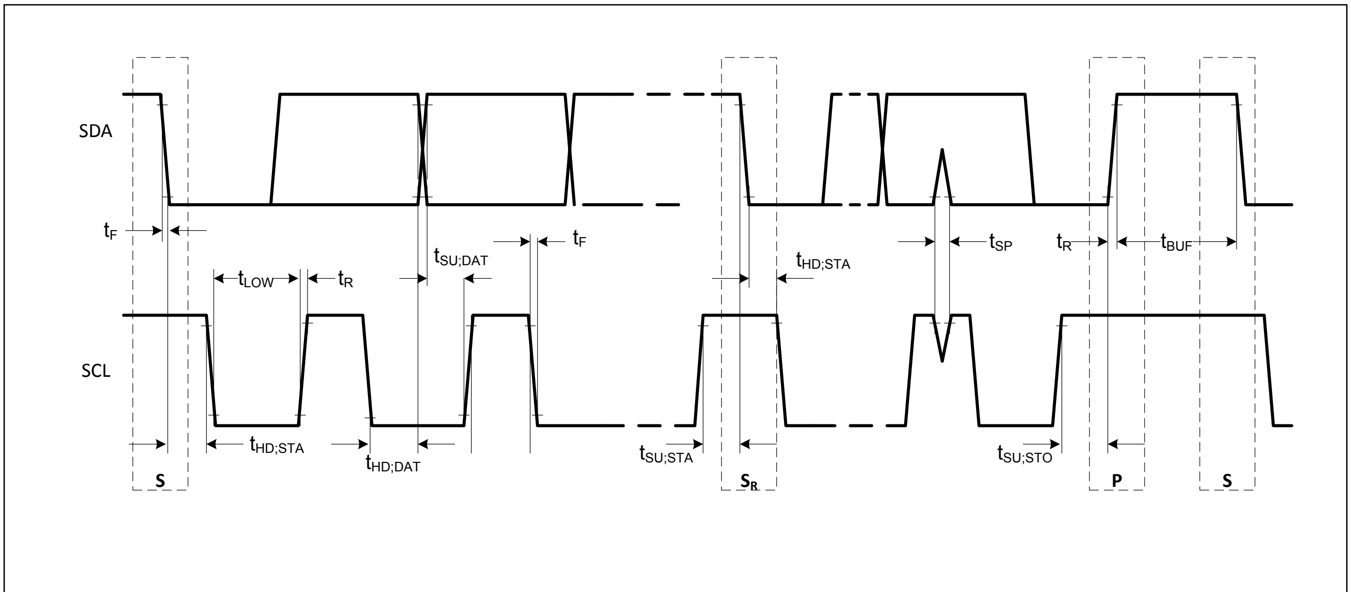


Figure 34. 2-Wire Bus Timing Diagram

I2C Protocols

The following 2-Wire communication protocols must be used by the bus master to access memory locations 000h to 1FFh. Addresses 000h to 0FFh and from 180h to 1FFh can be read continuously. Addresses 100h to 17Fh must be read one word at a time. These protocols follow the standard I2C specification for communication.

I2C Write Data Protocol

The Write Data protocol is used to transmit data to the IC at memory addresses from 000h to 1FFh. Addresses 000h to 0FFh and 180h to 1FFh can be written as a block. Addesses 100h to 17Fh must be written one word at a time. The memory address is sent by the bus master as a single byte value immediately after the slave address, followed by an ACK from the IC. The LSB of the data to be stored is written immediately after the memory address byte, followed by an ACK from the IC. The MSB of the data to be stored is written next, followed by an ACK from the IC. Because the address is automatically incremented after the least significant bit (LSb) of the MSB of each word received by the IC, the LSB of the data at the next memory address can be written immediately after the acknowledgment of the MSB of data at the previous address. The master indicates the end of a write transaction by sending a STOP or Repeated START after receiving the last acknowledge bit. If the bus master continues an auto-incremented write transaction beyond address 0FFh or 1FFh, the IC ignores the data. Data is also ignored on writes to read-only addresses but not reserved addresses. Do not write to reserved address locations. See Figure 35 for an example Write Data communication sequence.

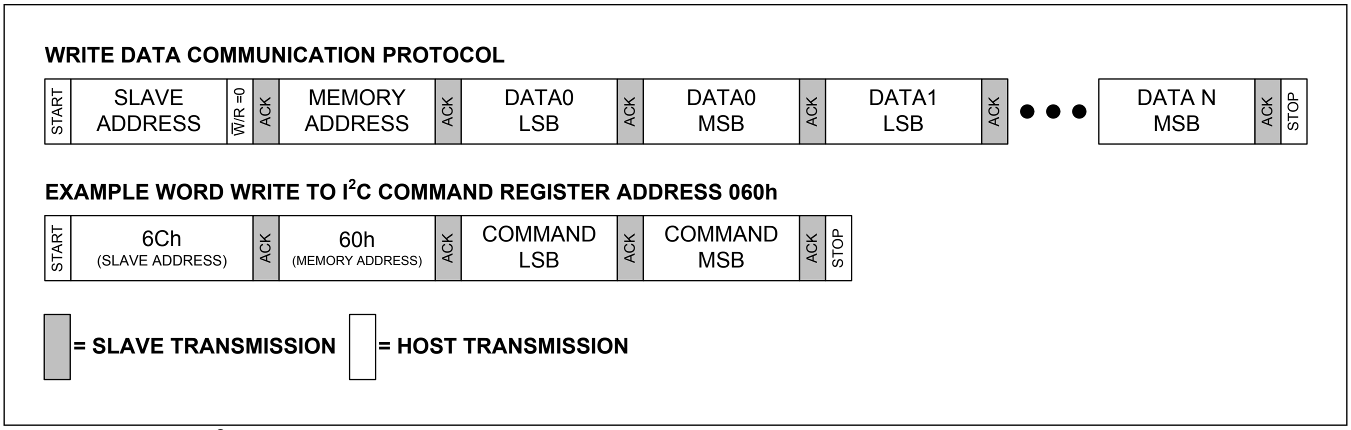


Figure 35. Example I2C Write Data Communication Sequence

I2C Read Data Protocol

The Read Data protocol is used to transmit data from IC memory locations 000h to 1FFh. Addresses 000h to 0FFh and 180h to 1FFh can be read as a block. Addresses 100h to 17Fh must be read as individual words. The memory address is sent by the bus master as a single-byte value immediately after the slave address. Immediately following the memory address, the bus master issues a REPEATED START followed by the slave address. The MAX17330 ACKs the address and begins transmitting data. A word of data is read as two separate bytes that the master must ACK. The LSB is read first, followed by an ACK from the master. The MSB is read next, followed by an ACK from the master. Because the address is automatically incremented after the least significant bit (LSb) of the MSB of each word transmitted by the IC, the LSB of the data at the next memory address can be read immediately after the acknowledgment of the MSB of data at the previous address. The master indicates the end of a read transaction by sending a NACK followed by a STOP. If the bus master continues an auto-incremented read transaction beyond memory address 0FFh or 1FFh, the IC transmits all 1s until a NACK or STOP is received. Data from reserved address locations is undefined. See Figure 36 for an example Read Data communication sequence.

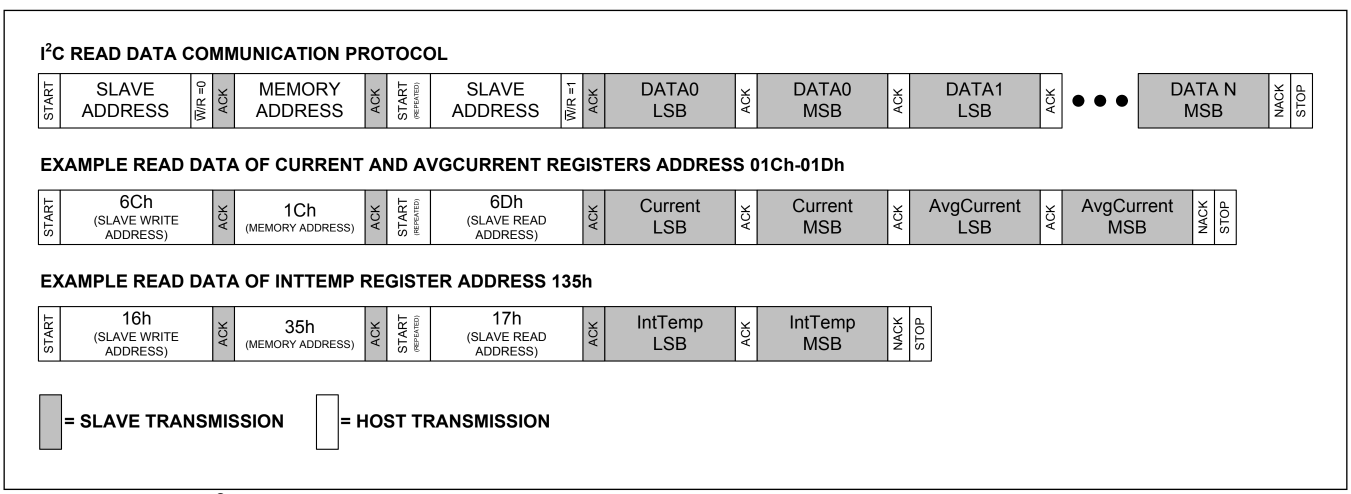


Figure 36. Example I2C Read Data Communication Sequence

SBS Protocols

The following 2-Wire communication protocols must be used by the bus master to access memory locations 100h to 17Fh. These protocols follow the smart battery specification for communication.

SBS Write Word Protocol

The Write Word protocol is used to transmit data to IC memory addresses between 100h and 17Fh that do not require the Write Block protocol. The memory address is sent by the bus master as a single byte LSB value immediately after the slave address and the MSb of the address is omitted. The LSB of the data to be stored is written immediately after the memory address byte is acknowledged, followed by the MSB. A PEC byte can follow the data word, but the data word is written without checking the validity of the PEC. The master indicates the end of a write transaction by sending a STOP or Repeated START after receiving the last acknowledge bit. Data is ignored on writes to read-only addresses but not reserved addresses. Do not write to reserved address locations. The Write Word protocol should not be used to write to addresses supported by the Write Block protocol, use Write Block at these locations instead. See Figure 37 for an example Write Word communication sequence.

Example SBS Write Word Communication Sequence

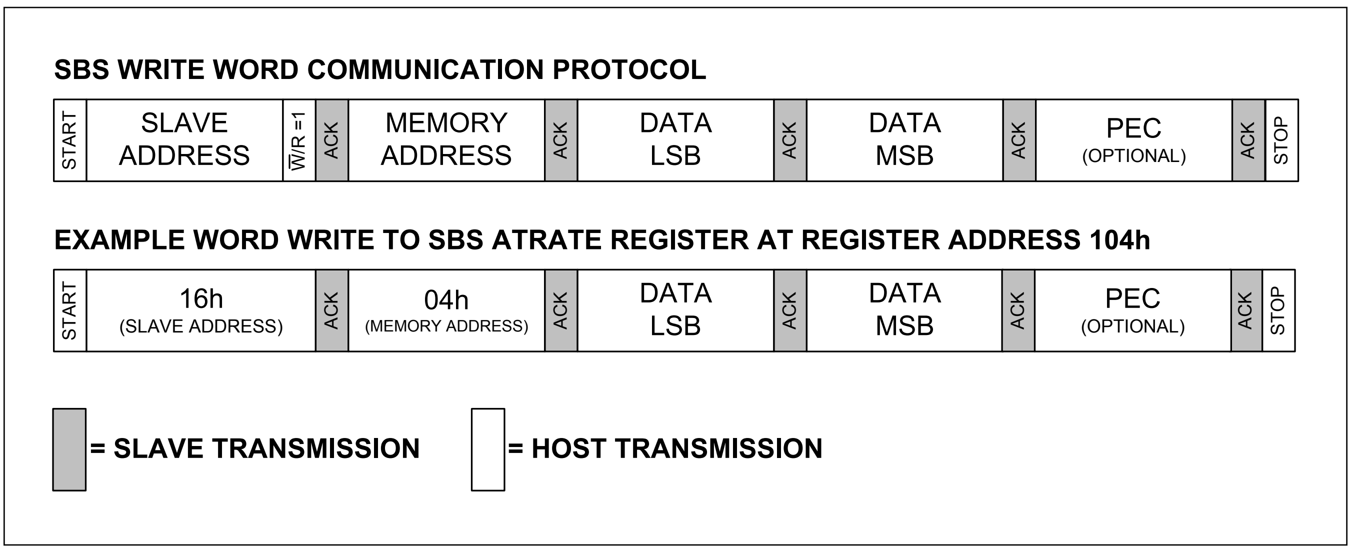


Figure 37. Example SBS Write Word Communication Sequence

SBS Read Word Protocol

The Read Word protocol is used to read data from the IC at memory addresses between 100h and 17Fh. The memory address is sent by the bus master as a single byte LSB value immediately after the slave address and the MSb of the address is ignored. The LSB of the data is read immediately after the memory address byte is acknowledged, followed by the MSB. A PEC byte follows the data word. The master indicates the end of a write transaction by sending a STOP or Repeated START after not acknowledging the last received byte. Data from reserved address locations is undefined. The Read Word protocol should not be used to read from addresses supported by the Read Block protocol, use Read Block at these locations instead. See Figure 38 for an example Read Word communication sequence.

Example SBS Read Word Communication Sequence

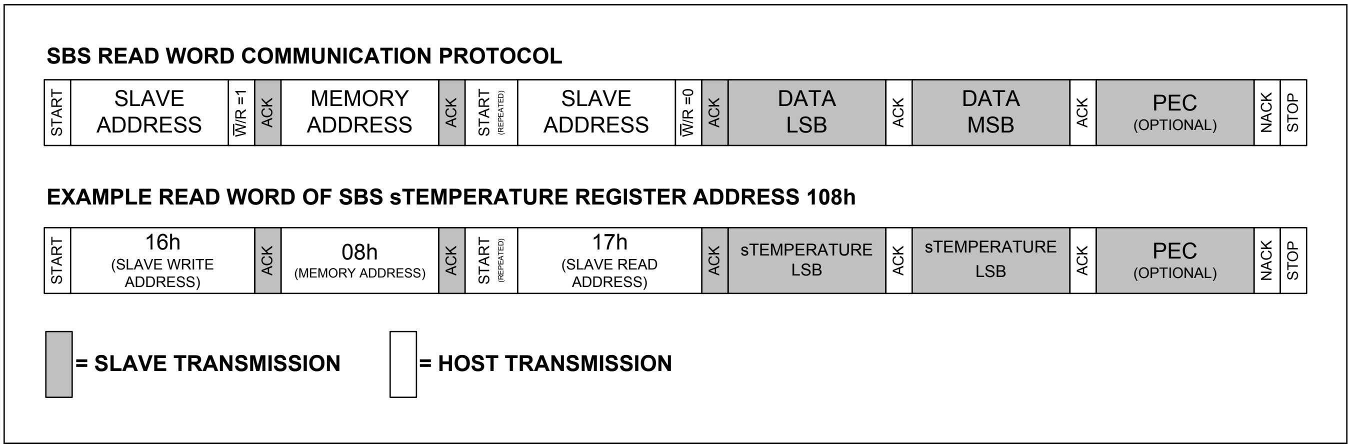


Figure 38. Example SBS Read Word Communication Sequence

SBS Write Block Protocol

The SBS Write Block protocol is not supported by the MAX17330. Use the Write Data command sequence to the corresponding nonvolatile memory locations to update Write/Read Block register locations. See Table 119.

SBS Read Block Protocol

The Read Block protocol is similar to the Read Word protocol except that the master reads multiple words of data at once. A data size byte is transmitted by the IC immediately after the memory address byte and before the first byte of data to be read. The Read Block protocol is only supported at the register locations shown in Table 126. PEC error checking is provided by the Read Block protocol if nNVCfg0.enSBS = 1. Figure 39 shows an example Read Block communication sequence.

Example SBS Read Block Communication Sequence

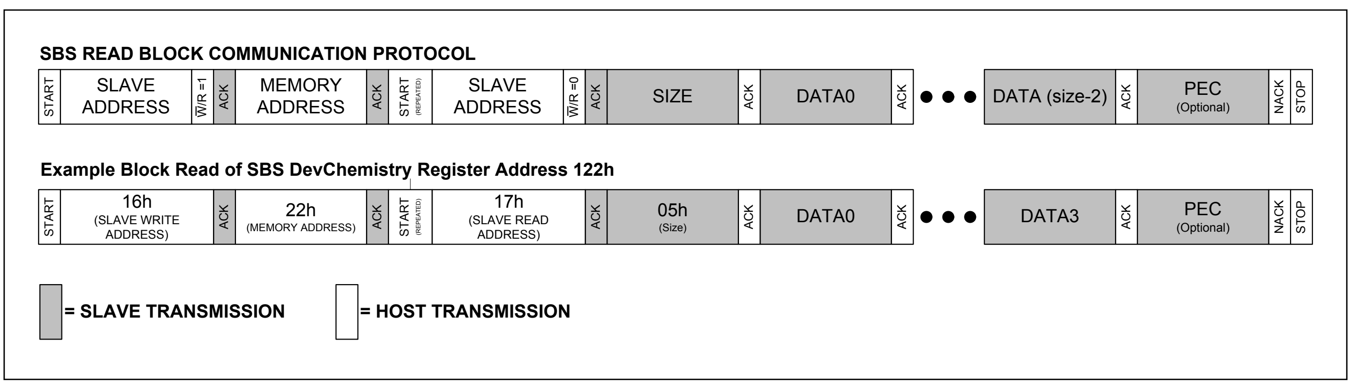


Figure 39. Example SBS Read Block Communication Sequence

Valid SBS Read Block Registers

Table 126. Valid SBS Read Block Registers

ADDRESS	REGISTER	SIZE BYTE MAX VALUE	FORMAT
0120h	sManfctName	0Ah	ASCII String
0121h	sDeviceName	0Ch	ASCII String
0122h	sDevChemistry	05h	ASCII String
0123h	sManfctData	1Ah	Hexadecimal
011Ch	sSerialNumber	08h	Hexadecimal
0170h	sManfctInfo	18h	Hexadecimal

Packet Error Checking

SBS read functions support packet error checking (PEC) if nNVCfg0.enSBS is enabled. The host system is responsible for verifying the CRC value it receives and then taking action as a result. SBS write functions accept a PEC byte but complete the write function regardless of the value of the PEC.

The CRC can be generated by the host using a circuit consisting of a shift register and XOR gates as shown in Figure 40, or it can be generated with software using the polynomial $X^8 + X^2 + X^1 + 1$. Refer to the *Smart Battery Data Specification* for more information.

PEC CRC Generation Block Diagram

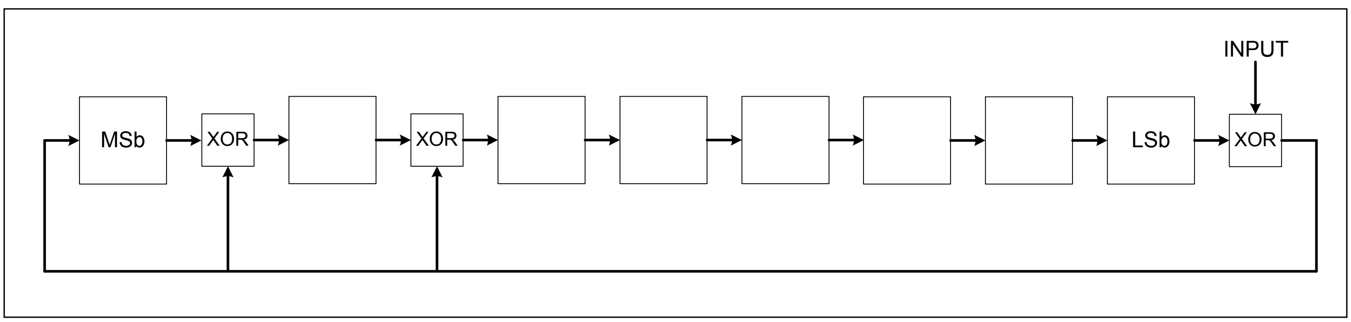


Figure 40. PEC CRC Generation Block Diagram

Appendix A: Reading History Data Pseudo-Code Example

The following pseudo-code can be used as a reference for reading history data from the IC. The code first reads and tests all flag information, then reads all valid history data into a two-dimensional array. Afterwards, the HistoryLength variable indicates the depth of the history array data.

```
Int WriteFlags[26];
Int ValidFlags[26];
Boolean PageGood[100];
Int HistoryData[100][16];
Int HistoryLength;
Int word, position, flag1, flag2, flag3, flag4;
//Read all flag information from the IC
WriteCommand(0xE29C);
Wait(tRECALL);
WriteFlags[0] = ReadData(0x1F2);
WriteFlags[1] = ReadData(0x1F3);
WriteFlags[2] = ReadData(0x1F4);
WriteFlags[3] = ReadData(0x1F5);
WriteFlags[4] = ReadData(0x1F6);
WriteFlags[5] = ReadData(0x1F7);
WriteFlags[6] = ReadData(0x1F8);
WriteFlags[7] = ReadData(0x1F9);
WriteFlags[8] = ReadData(0x1FA);
WriteFlags[9] = ReadData(0x1FB);
WriteFlags[10] = ReadData(0x1FC);
WriteFlags[11] = ReadData(0x1FD);
WriteFlags[12] = ReadData(0x1FE);
ValidFlags[0] = ReadData(0x1FF);
WriteCommand(0xE29D);
Wait(tRECALL);
ValidFlags[1] = ReadData(0x1F0);
ValidFlags[2] = ReadData(0x1F1);
ValidFlags[3] = ReadData(0x1F2);
ValidFlags[4] = ReadData(0x1F3);
ValidFlags[5] = ReadData(0x1F4);
ValidFlags[6] = ReadData(0x1F5);
ValidFlags[7] = ReadData(0x1F6);
ValidFlags[8] = ReadData(0x1F7);
ValidFlags[9] = ReadData(0x1F8);
ValidFlags[10] = ReadData(0x1F9);
ValidFlags[11] = ReadData(0x1FA);
```

```
ValidFlags[12] = ReadData(0x1FB);
//Determine which history pages contain valid data
For loop = 0 to 99
{
    word = (int)( loop / 8 );
    position = loop % 8 ;  //remainder
    flag1 = (WriteFlags[word] >> position) & 0x0001;
    flag2 = (WriteFlags[word] >> (position+8)) & 0x0001;
    flag3 = (ValidFlags[word] >> position) & 0x0001;
    flag4 = (ValidFlags[word] >> (position+8)) & 0x0001;
    if (flag1 || flag2) && (flag3 || flag4)
        PageGood[loop] = True;
    else
        PageGood[loop] = False;
}
//Read all the history data from the IC
HistoryLength = 0;
For loop = 0 to 99
{
    if(PageGood[loop]) == TRUE
    {
        SendCommand(0xE22E + loop);
        Wait(tRECALL);
        HistoryData[HistoryLength][0] = ReadData(0x1F0);
        ...
        HistoryData[HistoryLength][15] = ReadData(0x1FF);
        HistoryLength++;
    }
}
```

Appendix B: Parallel Cell Management Example

The following pseudo-code can be used as a reference for managing parallel batteries.

```
HOST PSEUDOCODE (on 500ms timer):
def on_500ms_timer():
   if(all(AllBatts.FProtStat.IsDis==0)):
      VMax = max(AllBatts.VCell)
      VMin = min(AllBatts.VCell)
      stepDown=stepUp=CrossCharge=False
      if(VMin<VSys_Min):  CrossCharge=True                    #1
      for Batt in AllBatts:
         Batt.Status=0xFFDF (AllowChgB=0)                  #2
         if(Batt.VCell>VMin+400mV and !CrossCharge):            #3
            Batt.Config2.BlockDis=1
```

```
    else:
      Batt.Config2.BlockDis=0                    #4

    if (Status.CA):
          if  (Batt.ChgStat.[CP,CT]): stepDown=True       #5
          elif(Batt.ChgStat.Dropout): stepUp  =True       #6
      Status=0xF7FF                               #7

  if(stepDown):   step DC-DC down                    #8
  elif(stepUp):   step DC-DC up
```

Notes:

1) Evaluate the minimum voltage battery for the ability to support system discharge. When the cell is too low, unplugging the charge source would result in a crash except if cross-charging is allowed
2) Indicate charger presense to all batteries (even blocked batteries)
3) Determine which batteries to block-discharge, to avoid cross-charging
4) Allow discharging if the low battery is much lower than the full battery or the low battery is below VSys_Min
5) Consider FET heat: (DC-DC voltage down)
6) Consider dropout: (DC-DC voltage up)
7) Clear Charge Alert bit
8) Optional: apply DC-DC update

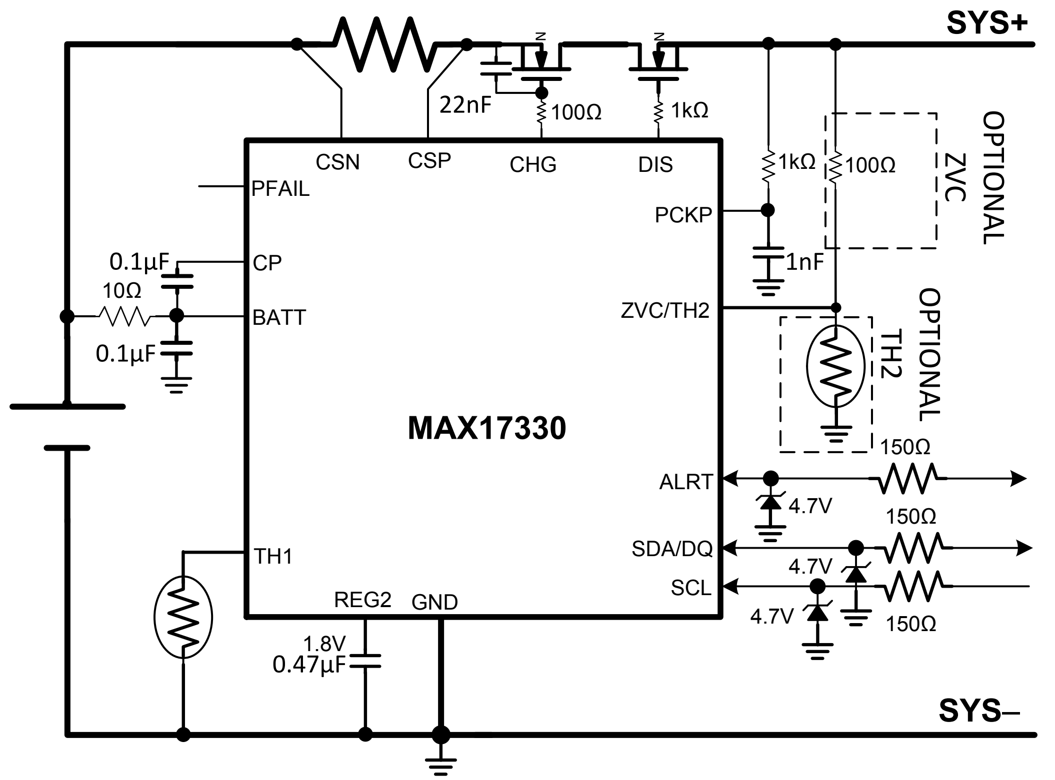
Applications:

1) Low-Power Parallel Charging (<500mA total). A 5V source such as USB connects directly to the system and both MAX17330 ICs. USB detection (such as BC1.2) is not needed since all USB adaptors provide 500mA. With each battery charge current set below 250mA, the CHG FET heat is lower than 350mW for 99% of the charge curve since the majority of the charge curve VBATT exceeds 3.6V. The heat in the CHG FET is calculated by the following equation: 250mA x (5.0V - 3.6V) = 350mW.

2) High-Power Parallel Charging (>500mA total). The application must have a programmable DC-DC converter supplying power to the MAX17330 ICs.

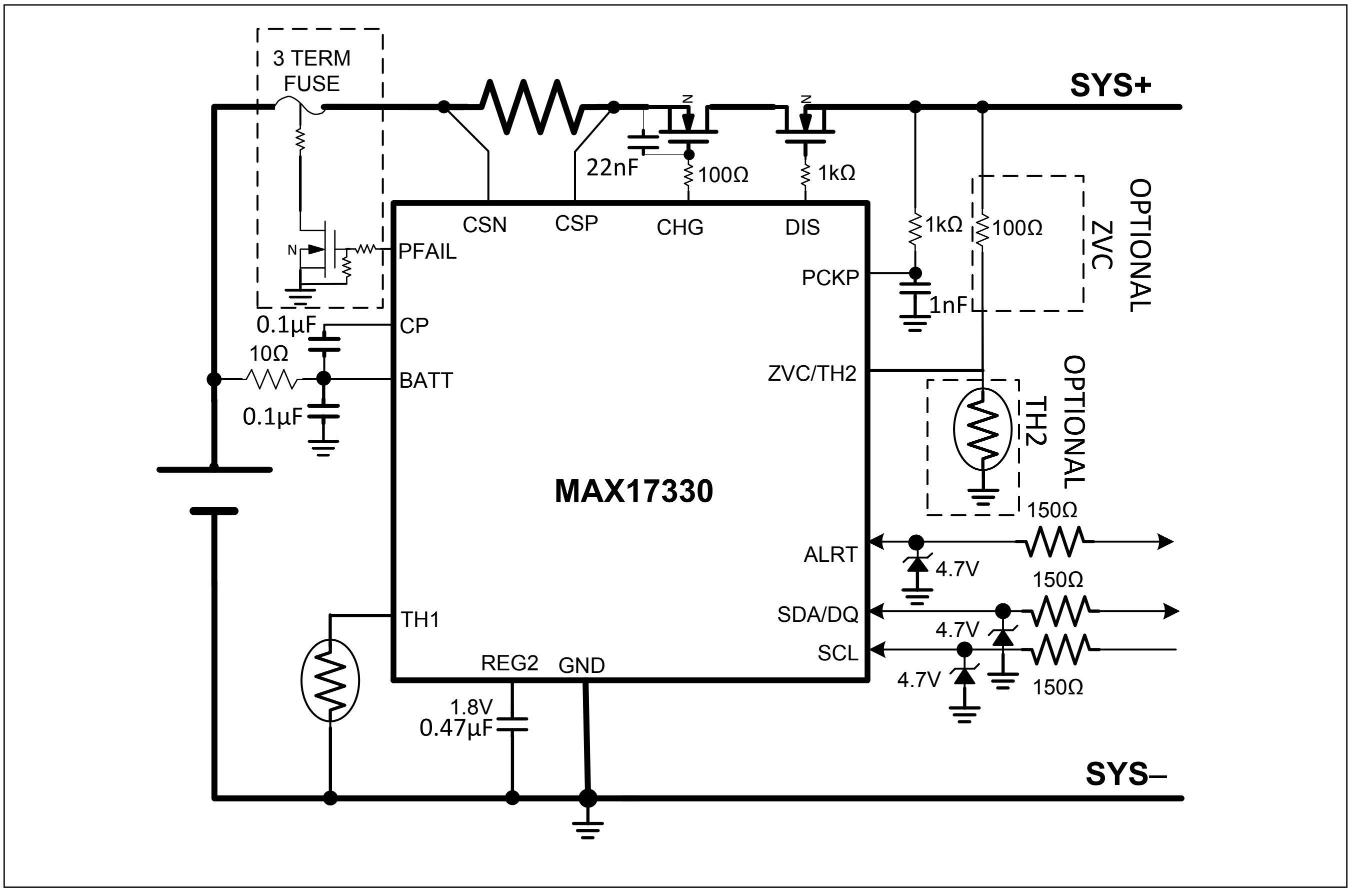
Typical Application Circuits

Typical Application Schematic



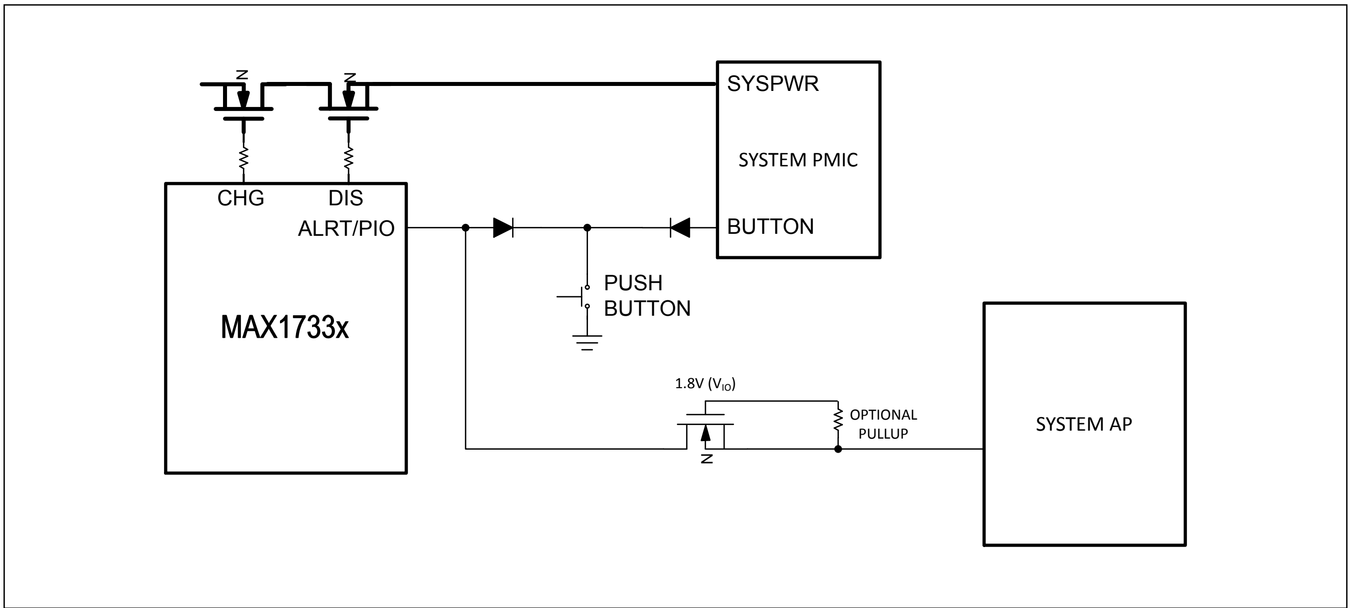
Typical Application Circuits (continued)

Typical Application Schematic with Fuse



Typical Application Circuits (continued)

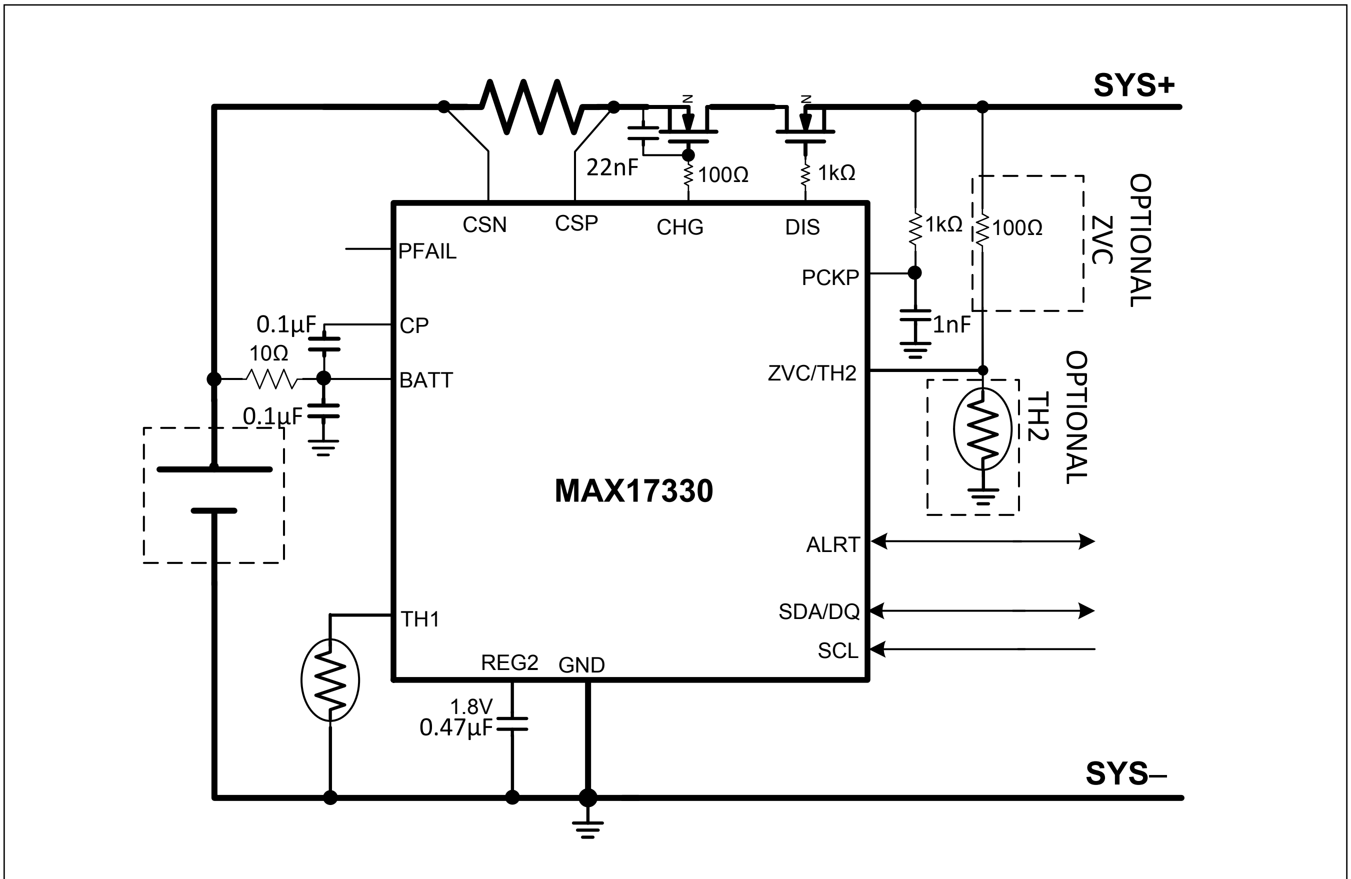
Pushbutton Schematic



A pushbutton can be shared by the MAX17330 and the system to wake up both the system and the MAX17330. The diode on the system interface PMIC blocks the pulldown when there is no supply, which prevents the wakeup for the MAX17330 when the system interface PMIC loses power in ship mode. The diode on the ALRT/PIO pin prevents the alert pulldown from triggering a button action on the PMIC, which prevents accidental shutdown in the event of an alert being uncleared for greater than ten seconds. The FET between MAX17330 and System AP blocks the System AP pulldown from triggering the wakeup when the AP doesn't have power. The FET acts as a level shifter and passes the pulldown alert signal in both directions when 1.8V of voltage is present.

Typical Application Circuits (continued)

Typical Application Schematic for System Side Implementaiton



Ordering Information

PART	INTERFACE	PIN-PACKAGE
MAX17330X22+	I2C	15 WLP
MAX17330X22+T	I2C	15 WLP

+Denotes a lead(Pb)-free/RoHS-compliant package.

T = Tape and reel.

Revision History

REVISION NUMBER	REVISION DATE	DESCRIPTION	PAGES CHANGED
0	5/21	Initial release	—
1	4/23	Updated title, *General Description*, Table 6, and Table 83, added *Zero-Volt Charge Recovery Diagram*, *HProtCfg2 Register*, removed *HConfig2 register*, updated *Charge Control, Parallel Battery Management, Permanent Failure, Status Register (000h), Config2 Register (0ABh), ProtAlrt Register (0AFh), nI2CCfg Register (1B4h), nProtMiscTh Register (1D6h), nDPLimit Register (1E0h), nOVPrtTh Register (1DAh), nDesignVoltage Register (1E3h), sMPPCurrent (15Eh), RCell Register (014h), nChgCfg1 Register (1CBh), Power, Enabling and Freeing Nonvolatile vs. Defaults, Nonvolatile Memory Configuration Options, Nonvolatile Block Programming, Secret Management, Single Step Secret Generation, Multi-Step Secret Generation Procedure, COMPUTE NEXT SECRET WITHOUT ROM ID [3000h], COMPUTE NEXT SECRET WITH ROM ID [3300h],* and *Typical Application Circuit,* added *SBS Protocols* section	All